

1 FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

2 I N D E X (PUBLIC RECORD)

3

4 WITNESS: DIRECT V-DIRE CROSS REDIRECT RECROSS

5 Miller 3275 (SP) 3286 3372 3403 3406

6 3307 (SP)

7 Russo 3408 (SP) 3466 3526 3532

8 Hoffman 3538 (SP) 3551 3572 3579

9

10 EXHIBITS FOR ID IN EVID

11 Commission

12 None

13 Schering

14 None

15 Upsher

16 None

17 Joint

18 JX 4* 3537

19 OTHER EXHIBITS REFERENCED PAGE

20 Commission

21 CX 12 3397

22 CX 17 3412

23 CX 18 3416

24 CX 20 3419

25 CX 338 3561

For The Record, Inc.
 Waldorf, Maryland
 (301) 870-8025

1	Commission	
2	CX 347	3550
3	CX 540	3441
4	CX 543	3443
5	CX 544	3445
6	CX 550	3455
7	CX 551	3461
8	CX 554	3461 (in camera)
9	CX 558	3466
10	CX 575	3434
11	CX 576	3447
12	CX 682	3428
13	CX 695	3491
14	CX 1040	3474
15	CX 1047	3513
16	CX 1659	3386
17	Schering	
18	SPX 93	3339
19	SPX 112	3452
20	SPX 194	3307
21	SPX 614	3438
22	SPX 675	3284
23	SPX 676	3313
24	SPX 687	3386
25	SPX 2039	3319

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1	Schering	
2	SPX 2040	3328
3	SPX 2042	3333
4	SPX 2060	3339
5	SPX 2155	3307
6	SPX 2209 to 2231	3414
7	Upsher	
8	None	

9

10 *All exhibits referenced in Joint Exhibit 4 are
11 admitted into evidence by reference (copy attached).

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION

In the Matter of:)
SCHERING-PLOUGH CORPORATION,)
a corporation,)
and)
UPSHER-SMITH LABORATORIES,) File No. D09297
a corporation,)
and)
AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS,)
a corporation.)
-----)

Wednesday, February 13, 2002

9:30 a.m.

TRIAL VOLUME 15

PART 1

PUBLIC RECORD

BEFORE THE HONORABLE D. MICHAEL CHAPPELL

Administrative Law Judge

Federal Trade Commission

600 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.

Washington, D.C.

Reported by: Susanne Bergling, RMR

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 APPEARANCES:

2

3 ON BEHALF OF THE FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION:

4 KAREN G. BOKAT, Attorney

5 MELVIN H. ORLANS, Attorney

6 PAUL J. NOLAN, Attorney

7 SUZANNE MICHEL, Attorney

8 SETH C. SILBER, Attorney

9 Federal Trade Commission

10 601 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.

11 Washington, D.C. 20580

12 (202) 326-2912

13

14

15 ON BEHALF OF SCHERING-PLOUGH CORPORATION:

16 JOHN W. NIELDS, Attorney

17 LAURA S. SHORES, Attorney

18 MARC G. SCHILDKRAUT, Attorney

19 JOSEPH M. LAVELLE, Attorney

20 VIVIAN S. KUO, Attorney

21 Howrey, Simon, Arnold & White

22 1299 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.

23 Washington, D.C. 20004-2402

24 (202) 783-0800

25

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 ON BEHALF OF UPSHER-SMITH LABORATORIES:

2 ROBERT D. PAUL, Attorney

3 J. MARK GIDLEY, Attorney

4 CHRISTOPHER M. CURRAN, Attorney

5 White & Case, LLP

6 601 Thirteenth Street, N.W.

7 Suite 600 South

8 Washington, D.C. 20005-3805

9 (202) 626-3610

10

11

12 ON BEHALF OF AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS:

13 ANIKA SANDERS COOPER, Attorney

14 Arnold & Porter

15 555 Twelfth Street, N.W.

16 Washington, D.C. 20004-1206

17 (202) 942-5667

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 P R O C E E D I N G S

2 - - - - -

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Good morning, everyone.

4 ALL COUNSEL: Good morning, Your Honor.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Let's reconvene docket 9297.

6 Any matters to take up before we call the next
7 witness?

8 MR. LAVELLE: Not from Schering, Your Honor.

9 MR. CURRAN: Not from Upsher, Your Honor.

10 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I would just like to
11 let you know and let Mr. Lavelle know that I intend to
12 request voir dire on this witness and to renew our
13 motion to limit his testimony --

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Hang on. Somebody needs to
15 turn off whatever that is.

16 Sorry, go ahead.

17 MS. MICHEL: And we would renew our motion to
18 limit his testimony as I'll argue based on the voir
19 dire at that time.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: So, you want to voir dire this
21 witness before he testifies, after he's sworn?

22 MS. MICHEL: After Mr. Lavelle establishes his
23 credentials, I'd like to take voir dire of this witness
24 and test the reliability of his opinion and the issue
25 of whether or not it satisfies Daubert.

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, call your next witness.

2 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor. We call
3 Charles Miller.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Raise your right hand, please.
5 Whereupon--

6 CHARLES E. MILLER
7 a witness, called for examination, having been first
8 duly sworn, was examined and testified as follows:

9 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you, have a seat.
10 State your full name, please.

11 THE WITNESS: My name is Charles E. Miller.

12 DIRECT EXAMINATION

13 BY MR. LAVELLE:

14 Q. Good morning, Mr. Miller.

15 A. Good morning.

16 Q. Mr. Miller, you're a lawyer. Is that correct?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Where do you practice law?

19 A. In New York City.

20 Q. And with what law firm, sir?

21 A. Pennie & Edmonds LLP.

22 Q. How long have you been at Pennie & Edmonds?

23 A. About 31 years.

24 Q. And are you a partner at Pennie & Edmonds?

25 A. Yes, I'm a senior partner.

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 Q. And for how long have you been a partner at
2 Pennie & Edmonds?

3 A. For -- for about 14 years, since 1978.

4 Q. Does Pennie & Edmonds specialize in a
5 particular area of law?

6 A. Yes. I would like to correct my previous
7 statement. Since 1978, that's 24 years, I believe.

8 Q. You've been a partner for 24 years?

9 A. Yes, I'm sorry.

10 Q. Does Pennie & Edmonds have an area of law in
11 which it specializes?

12 A. Pennie & Edmonds specializes in intellectual
13 property law.

14 Q. And for how long has Pennie & Edmonds been
15 specializing in intellectual property law?

16 A. Since its founding in 1883.

17 Q. Thank you, sir.

18 Do you personally have an area of law in which
19 you concentrate your practice?

20 A. I normally concentrate my practice in the field
21 of patent law.

22 Q. Is there a specialized Bar for members -- for
23 people who practice patent law?

24 A. Yes, with respect to practicing before the U.S.
25 Patent and Trademark Office in patent matters, there

1 is.

2 Q. Are you a member of the Bar of the United
3 States Patent and Trademark Office?

4 A. Yes, since 1967.

5 Q. Thank you.

6 Does Pennie & Edmonds represent Schering-Plough
7 in any matters?

8 A. No. In fact, Pennie & Edmonds has been and is
9 adverse to Schering-Plough in several matters, and
10 consequently, when I was asked to accept this
11 assignment, it was necessary for me to obtain waivers
12 from those clients of the firm that are adverse to
13 Schering-Plough, and those waivers were obtained.

14 Q. Thank you.

15 Have you personally done any work for Schering
16 prior to this case?

17 A. No.

18 Q. Where did you get your law degree, sir?

19 A. From New York University in 1970.

20 Q. Prior to that, did you get an undergraduate
21 degree?

22 A. Yes, prior to my law school education, I was
23 graduated from Columbia College in 1963 with a
24 Bachelor's Degree in chemistry. After that, I received
25 the Master's of Science degree in chemistry from

1 Columbia University. And after that, in 1966, I was
2 graduated with a degree of Ph.D. in organic chemistry.

3 Q. What was the subject matter of your thesis in
4 your Ph.D. pursuit, sir?

5 A. My Ph.D. thesis process was related to
6 synthetic approaches to aureomycin, which is a type of
7 antibiotic.

8 Q. Thank you.

9 Would you tell us what your practice consists
10 of at Pennie & Edmonds?

11 A. My practice at Pennie & Edmonds consists to a
12 large extent of litigation and counseling and
13 consulting with clients with respect to opinion work
14 and licensing matters, and I also manage a substantial
15 docket of patent prosecution cases.

16 Q. Do you represent clients in litigation?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Do you represent clients in arbitration
19 matters?

20 A. Yes, I have represented scores of clients in
21 arbitration matters.

22 Q. Have you also acted as an arbiter from time to
23 time?

24 A. Yes, particularly under the auspices of the
25 American Arbitration Association, the International

1 Chamber of Commerce and the World Intellectual Property
2 Organization.

3 Q. Thank you, sir.

4 Have you been appointed as a special master to
5 take evidence by a federal district court judge?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Would you explain that matter to us, please,
8 tell us a little bit about it?

9 A. In about 1988, I was appointed a special master
10 by the U.S. District Court for the District of
11 Massachusetts in a patent infringement litigation
12 between 3M and Ampad Corporation in a case involving a
13 series of U.S. patents relating to the adhesive
14 material that is applied to sheets of paper that we are
15 all familiar with, for example, they are sold under the
16 trademark Post-It Notes.

17 Q. And what did you do as special master in that
18 case?

19 A. My task as special master in that case was
20 to -- primarily to conduct the evidentiary hearing,
21 that is to say, the trial in the case, to receive
22 evidence, make rulings on admissibility of evidence and
23 to finally render a special master's report containing
24 my findings of fact and conclusions of law, and this
25 was all pursuant to what I believe is Rule 53 of the

1 Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

2 Q. And did you, in fact, preside over a trial?

3 A. That was a trial that I presided over, yes.

4 Q. And how long did that trial last?

5 A. Several months.

6 Q. And did your report include findings of fact
7 and conclusions of law?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Was your report accepted by the federal judge?

10 A. The report was reviewed by the parties, and the
11 case was settled as a result of that report.

12 Q. Thank you, sir.

13 Sir, in your experience, are patent lawyers
14 called on to evaluate the likely outcome of patent
15 litigation?

16 A. This is part and parcel of much of the work
17 that we do when we represent clients and particularly
18 with regard to advising them in matters affecting their
19 rights and potential liabilities in possible patent
20 cases.

21 Q. Very good.

22 Are federal courts called on from time to time
23 to assess the likely outcome of litigation?

24 A. I think it happens fairly often, particularly
25 in the context of what we call preliminary injunction

1 motions, which are brought by plaintiff patent owners
2 against -- are motions filed by plaintiff patent owners
3 seeking to enjoin the defendant from continuing the
4 accused activity pending the outcome of the case. The
5 judge conducts a hearing in order to ascertain a number
6 of factors that are required to be considered in
7 deciding whether or not to issue a preliminary
8 injunction.

9 One of those factors, and this gets to your
10 question in particular, is the consideration of the
11 evidence presented to the judge and a decision that he
12 must make is whether -- whether the plaintiff would be
13 likely to succeed on the merits based on the evidence
14 presented at the preliminary injunction hearing.

15 Q. Thank you, sir.

16 On what matters does a patent lawyer rely in
17 attempting to evaluate the likely outcome of
18 litigation, patent litigation?

19 A. Well, certainly he would evaluate the -- and
20 study and comprehend the patent itself. He must
21 consider the prosecution record of the patent in the
22 Patent and Trademark Office when it's pending as an
23 application. He must consider the nature of the
24 product that his client is concerned with, you know, in
25 the context of whether or not there would be any

1 liability on the part of that client for patent
2 infringement.

3 Q. Thank you.

4 Are there objective sources of law available
5 for patent lawyers to consult in evaluating the outcome
6 of the patent litigation?

7 A. I'm not sure I understand that question.

8 Q. Okay. Where do you turn to to understand the
9 law you apply is all I'm really asking you.

10 A. Well, you determine first what are the likely
11 issues to be decided in the case, the material issues,
12 and then the attorney will have to assess the law that
13 is applicable to that issue during the period in which
14 the litigation would be pending.

15 Q. Have you been called on in your profession to
16 evaluate the likely outcome of patent litigation?

17 A. Yes, many times.

18 Q. Are you a member of the Bar of the United
19 States Supreme Court?

20 A. Yes, I am.

21 Q. Are you a member of the Bar of any United
22 States courts of appeals?

23 A. Yes, the Court of Appeals for the Federal
24 Circuit, which is the appellate court that handles most
25 patent appeals; the Court of Appeals for the Second

1 Circuit; and the Court of Appeals for the Fourth
2 Circuit.

3 Q. Are you a member of the Bars of any United
4 States Federal District Courts?

5 A. Yes, I am a member of all of the district
6 courts -- Federal District Courts in the state of New
7 York, there are four of them, and a member of the
8 Federal District Court for the District of Columbia.

9 Q. Are you a member of the United States Court of
10 Federal Claims?

11 A. Yes, I am.

12 Q. Okay. Are you a member of the American Bar
13 Association?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Are you a member of the American Intellectual
16 Property Law Association?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Are you a member of the New York State Bar
19 Association?

20 A. Yes, I'm a member of the New York State Bar
21 Association, and in that context I'm an active member
22 of the Federal Litigation Committee of the New York
23 State Bar Association.

24 Q. Thank you.

25 Are you a member of the American Chemical

1 Society?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Sir, in your book, would you turn to Exhibit
4 SPX 675. Do you recognize Exhibit 675?

5 Your Honor, I put a book on your -- on your
6 stand as well.

7 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

8 THE WITNESS: This is my resume or curriculum
9 vitae which I provided to Mr. Lavelle at the outset of
10 my assignment.

11 BY MR. LAVELLE:

12 Q. Is the CV correct and reasonably up to date?

13 A. It's essentially up to date, yes.

14 Q. And is it correct so far as what it sets forth?

15 A. I believe so, yes.

16 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, at this time I am
17 going to offer Mr. Miller as an expert in patent law
18 and the evaluation of patent litigation.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do we have an objection?

20 MS. MICHEL: I'd like to conduct voir dire on
21 this witness, Your Honor, in order to better define the
22 scope under which we would accept him as a -- his
23 expertise.

24 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Did you tell me earlier you're
25 renewing a motion in limine that you filed earlier?

1 MS. MICHEL: We do have a motion in limine
2 pending regarding this witness.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. Do you have a copy of
4 it, and does respondent have a copy of their opposition
5 and response to that motion in limine?

6 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, I thought you had
7 denied their motion in limine once already. I think
8 they're going to renew something you already denied.

9 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Lavelle, I'm asking if you
10 have a copy of it.

11 MR. LAVELLE: I'll look, Your Honor.
12 Your Honor, I have a copy of our opposition
13 that I am happy to hand up to you if it would be
14 helpful.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do you have one that's not
16 marked up?

17 MR. LAVELLE: I have one that only has yellow
18 highlighting.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Since complaint counsel wants
20 to take the witness on voir dire, I'm going to request
21 that you provide me a copy of the motion in limine and
22 any response that was filed to it, and I'll take a
23 break until you can do so.

24 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I have a copy here.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do you have the response? I

1 need a clean copy.

2 MS. MICHEL: Let me see if I -- yes, I do.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And I am going to give it back
4 to you when I'm through.

5 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Now, let's just take a break
7 while I refresh my recollection.

8 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor. There are only a
9 limited number of pages in the motion that are
10 pertinent to this witness.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

12 (Pause in the proceedings.)

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: All right, Ms. Michel -- it is
14 Michel?

15 MS. MICHEL: Michel, Your Honor.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You may proceed.

17 VOIR DIRE EXAMINATION

18 BY MS. MICHEL:

19 Q. Good morning, Mr. Miller.

20 A. Good morning.

21 Q. Mr. Miller, you've never been qualified as an
22 expert in antitrust law by any court, have you?

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. And you're not an expert in antitrust law,
25 correct?

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. You don't have any degrees in economics, do
3 you?

4 A. No.

5 Q. You're not an expert in economics?

6 A. I am not.

7 Q. You've never been a district court judge?

8 A. No.

9 Q. Your thesis work in chemistry did not involve
10 any polymer chemistry, did it?

11 A. No, it did not.

12 Q. You've never worked as a pharmacist in the
13 field of pharmaceutical coatings?

14 A. I have not been a professional scientist.

15 Q. And you're not a person of skill in the art,
16 then, in the area of pharmaceutical coatings.

17 A. I'm not an expert, but I consider myself
18 knowledgeable.

19 Q. You're not a person of ordinary skill in the
20 art in the field of pharmaceutical coatings, are you,
21 Mr. Miller?

22 A. I really don't know. Probably not.

23 Q. Mr. Miller, did you hear Dr. Banker yesterday
24 define a person of ordinary skill in the art for
25 pharmaceutical coatings as a person with at least a

1 number of years of experience in that area?

2 A. I heard something to that effect, yes.

3 Q. And you're not a person with any experience in
4 the field of pharmaceutical coatings, are you, Mr.
5 Miller?

6 A. That's correct, I have not worked nor have I
7 had any practical employment experience in the field of
8 pharmaceuticals.

9 Q. You were paid by Schering for the time you
10 spent forming your opinion and preparing your expert
11 report in this case. Is that correct?

12 A. I expect to be paid, yes, irrespective of the
13 outcome of this case.

14 Q. And you'll be paid by Schering for your time
15 here today, correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Mr. Miller, you did not participate in the
18 underlying patent litigation between ESI and Schering,
19 did you?

20 A. No, I did not.

21 Q. You were not present at any of the hearings
22 held before Judge DuBois.

23 A. I was not.

24 Q. And you were not present at any of the meetings
25 in Judge DuBois' chambers.

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. You were not present at any of the meetings
3 with the magistrate judge in the ESI case.

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. You didn't advise either ESI or Schering
6 regarding the merits of the patent litigation while
7 that case was pending.

8 A. That's correct.

9 Q. And your opinion regarding the merits of the
10 litigation played no role in the parties reaching
11 settlement then.

12 A. Could you repeat that question, please?

13 Q. Your opinion regarding the merits of the patent
14 litigation played no role in the parties reaching
15 settlement in that case.

16 A. No, my opinion followed it.

17 Q. You have not reviewed any documents
18 contemporaneous to the patent litigation assessing the
19 parties' chances of winning, have you?

20 A. No, I did not.

21 Q. You have not reviewed any attorney-client
22 privileged documents from the patent litigation.

23 A. I have not.

24 Q. You don't know what the attorneys for Schering
25 and ESI were telling each of their clients regarding

1 the odds of prevailing in the patent litigation at the
2 time of settlement.

3 A. No, I don't.

4 Q. And so you will not -- you cannot offer any
5 testimony on how either ESI or Schering viewed its
6 chances of winning the patent litigation at the time of
7 settlement.

8 A. No, I cannot. I have no information from
9 either of those parties that would give me that
10 information.

11 Q. Okay, thank you.

12 Now, ESI and Schering both had technical
13 experts who testified at the Markman hearing, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. You've never discussed with Judge DuBois how he
16 would have -- how he assessed the credibility of those
17 experts.

18 A. No, I did not.

19 Q. You've never discussed the claim interpretation
20 issues with Judge DuBois.

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. You don't know how Judge DuBois would have
23 ruled on the claim interpretation issues.

24 A. I do not know how he would have ruled for a
25 fact. I don't know for a fact how he would have ruled

1 on that case.

2 Q. Thank you.

3 There was to be a trial following the Markman
4 hearing. Is that correct?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. You don't know what witnesses the parties would
7 have called at the trial.

8 A. I have no specific recollection of any expert
9 or any witness list having been provided to Judge
10 DuBois at that time. I can -- I can surmise that some
11 of the experts that -- whose reports I read would have
12 been presented, but I don't know for sure, because I
13 haven't -- as I said, I did not receive nor have I had
14 any custody of any document indicating the specific
15 witness list that would have been provided to the
16 Court.

17 Q. So, you don't know how Judge DuBois would have
18 assessed the credibility of any witnesses that might
19 have appeared at trial.

20 A. That would have been an element that I did not
21 have any information on.

22 Q. You don't know --

23 A. That would be for Judge -- that would be Judge
24 DuBois' own mental impressions, of which I cannot speak
25 to.

1 Q. You don't know what exhibits the parties would
2 have submitted at trial.

3 A. Not specifically.

4 Q. And you don't know which of those exhibits
5 would have been entered into evidence.

6 A. Not specifically, but I believe that's -- I do
7 know some of the exhibits that probably -- most likely
8 would have been proffered and admitted.

9 Q. You can know some of the exhibits that would
10 have been proffered, but you don't know all of the
11 exhibits.

12 A. They may have been all of the exhibits. I
13 don't know.

14 Q. You can't know all of the exhibits that would
15 have been offered at trial.

16 A. That's probably correct.

17 Q. And you can't know how the lawyers' opening and
18 closing arguments would have gone at trial.

19 A. No, I don't know that.

20 Q. And you don't know how Judge DuBois would have
21 ultimately decided the patent case.

22 A. I do not know what Judge DuBois himself would
23 have decided. That was a matter for him to decide in
24 his own mind, which I have no privy to.

25 Q. So, you don't intend to offer any opinion on

1 the likely outcome of the patent litigation based on
2 any personal knowledge of Judge DuBois' views.

3 A. That's correct.

4 Q. Mr. Miller, you formed an opinion on the likely
5 outcome of the patent litigation between ESI and
6 Schering. Is that right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And you intend to offer that opinion testimony
9 today.

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Now, your technique for determining the likely
12 outcome of the patent litigation was to form your own
13 opinion on the likely outcome from the point of view of
14 a hypothetical judge. Is that correct?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. To form that opinion, you read selected
17 portions of the written record. Is that right?

18 A. I read every piece of paper that was provided
19 to me by counsel for Schering that would have been --
20 likely would have been evidence before the Court in
21 this case, both by ESI as well as Key. I'm using Key
22 rather than Schering.

23 Q. I'll try to do so also, then.

24 A. Okay.

25 Q. Counsel for Schering did not provide you the

1 complete written record in the ESI-Schering case.

2 A. I'm sorry?

3 Q. Counsel for Schering, in asking you to form
4 your opinion, did not provide you with the complete
5 written record available from the ESI-Schering case.
6 Is that right?

7 A. I don't know if they provided me with every
8 piece of paper that would have been proffered, but they
9 provided me with what I considered to be a
10 comprehensive record that would have been sufficient
11 for me to assess objectively how the case probably
12 would have turned out.

13 Q. Mr. Miller, the likely outcome of the patent
14 litigation between ESI and Schering depends on how
15 Judge DuBois would have determined the case. Isn't
16 that right?

17 A. State it again, please.

18 Q. The likely outcome of the patent litigation
19 between ESI and Schering depends on how Judge DuBois
20 would have determined the outcome of the case.

21 A. Not necessarily. The likely outcome of how the
22 case would have turned out would be something that I
23 could -- that I have sought to and I believe I have
24 assessed based on my objective review of the record.
25 What Judge DuBois would have decided is unknown to

1 anyone since the case was settled.

2 Q. I think we can agree on that point.

3 Then your technique for assessing the likely
4 outcome of the litigation does not consider how judge
5 DuBois would have assessed the credibility of any
6 potential witnesses?

7 A. I did not seek to delve into the mind of Judge
8 DuBois. I had no way of doing so.

9 Q. And your technique for predicting or for coming
10 to an opinion on the likely outcome of the patent
11 litigation did not take into consideration the skill of
12 the litigating attorneys. Is that right?

13 A. Not specifically, but I know that both sides
14 were capable attorneys.

15 Q. Now, no court has ever accepted this technique
16 of predicting the likely outcome of patent litigation
17 that settled, have they?

18 A. I'm not specifically aware of a case in which
19 that happened.

20 Q. So, no court has ever accepted this technique
21 of reading parts of the written record in order to
22 predict the likely outcome of patent litigation that
23 settled as a reliable test.

24 A. I can't answer that question. I just don't
25 know.

1 Q. You're not aware of any court accepting this
2 technique as reliable. Is that right?

3 A. I don't recall if there was any. I don't know.

4 Q. Now, we can never know if your opinion on the
5 likely outcome of the patent litigation is correct,
6 because the case will never be tried. Is that right?

7 A. We can never know with 100 percent certainty.

8 Q. So, your opinion on the likely outcome can
9 never be tested.

10 A. In terms of what the actual outcome of the
11 litigation had it gone to trial, you're correct.

12 Q. We don't know whether your technique for
13 predicting the likely outcome of the patent litigation
14 gives reproducible results.

15 A. I don't -- I don't necessarily agree with that.
16 In my testimony on direct, I was asked have I ever
17 myself assessed the likely outcomes of litigations, and
18 while you are correct that there may be no court
19 decision in which that was taken into account, I can
20 tell you that part and parcel of what I do and what
21 most patent lawyers do who represent clients is to
22 advise them repeatedly in matters that affect the
23 likely outcome of a controversy that may develop in
24 connection with potential patent infringement.

25 Also, during the course of patent infringement

1 litigation, it's almost always the case that an
2 attorney would be called upon by his client to assess
3 independently and objectively the likely outcome of the
4 case as it heads toward trial. That's a continuing
5 chore that patent lawyers perform on behalf of their
6 clients. So, the assignment that I carried out in this
7 case is not one that to me would be unique in the
8 patent profession.

9 Q. So, you've evaluated the likely outcome of
10 patent litigation for clients?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And you've been wrong in your evaluation at
13 times; courts have decided against you. Is that
14 correct?

15 A. I'm trying to think of a case where I was
16 wrong. I have to tell you that I have never -- well, I
17 don't want to sound overly confident, but I cannot
18 recall any instance where I advised a client on the
19 likely outcome of a litigation that I was representing
20 it on that was contrary to the opinion that I rendered.

21 Q. How many cases -- what percentage of cases that
22 you've offered such advice on have actually gone to
23 trial and been decided by district court judges?

24 A. I've been involved in about four to six cases
25 that went to trial.

1 Q. So, your sample size is about four to six
2 cases?

3 A. Cases that actually went to trial, yes.

4 Q. Now, Mr. Miller, you agree that no one can
5 quantify the odds of one party winning a patent
6 litigation because of the unpredictable nature of
7 patent litigation?

8 A. I don't think patent litigation is
9 unpredictable.

10 Q. You agree that even when a party thinks that
11 its case is a slam-dunk, it might not get the desired
12 result?

13 A. It's impossible to predict the likely outcome
14 of any case with 100 percent certainty, so your use of
15 the term "slam-dunk" is not a defined term in this
16 examination of me, but I -- I'm not sure I can really
17 answer that question.

18 Q. Rachel, could you help me with the ELMO,
19 please?

20 Mr. Miller, I'd like to direct your attention
21 to -- let's see, actually, I can give you a binder if
22 that would be helpful.

23 A. I can read it off of the screen.

24 Q. All right, or if you would like the complete
25 transcript, I can also supply you with a binder with

1 your complete deposition transcript.

2 I'd like to direct your attention to --

3 A. May I ask you what this is?

4 Q. Actually, why don't I get out the binders.

5 That would probably be easier for everybody.

6 Your Honor, may I approach the Bench and the
7 witness to hand binders?

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may. Thank you.

9 BY MS. MICHEL:

10 Q. Mr. Miller, your deposition transcript can be
11 found at I believe it's the second tab in the binder.
12 I would direct your attention to page 96, and beginning
13 at the top of page 96, you were asked:

14 "QUESTION: Why is it hard to predict how a
15 jury would have resolved fact issues?

16 "ANSWER: In a general sense?

17 "QUESTION: In this case.

18 "ANSWER: Well, this case, like other cases, no
19 party can ever expect perfect answers, perfect
20 verdicts, perfect judgments, perfect justice. You can
21 only get what you can -- hopefully will be a reasoned
22 and just result but not necessarily perfect, and
23 there's always, therefore, an element of
24 predictability. You can go in -- you know, you can go
25 in with a case that you think is a slam-dunk, and it

1 doesn't turn out to be that way."

2 Mr. Miller, do you still agree with that
3 statement?

4 A. Essentially, yes. I would have used a
5 different term than "slam-dunk," however, if I were
6 giving this answer again. I think that's a term that I
7 think I would rather have substituted with the term
8 "100 percent chance of winning."

9 Q. Now, Mr. Miller, you mentioned in preliminary
10 injunction motions, a judge sometimes determines the
11 likelihood of success on the merits?

12 A. He must decide that in deciding the -- in
13 deciding what the motion -- on whether or not a
14 preliminary injunction is to be granted.

15 Q. Now, but when a judge makes that assessment of
16 the likelihood of success on the merits, he takes -- he
17 takes evidence on the question; he takes testimony from
18 witnesses and other evidence offered by the parties.
19 Isn't that correct?

20 A. That's correct.

21 Q. And Judge DuBois never took testimony from the
22 parties and evidence at a trial in this patent case,
23 did he?

24 A. There was no trial in this case.

25 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, at this time, I'd like

1 to make a motion to limit Mr. Miller's testimony. My
2 understanding is that Mr. Miller is going to testify on
3 the likely outcome of this patent litigation.

4 Now, we would accept Mr. Miller as a patent
5 expert for the purposes of summarizing the evidence
6 that was presented and available to the parties in the
7 patent litigation and to explain how that evidence was
8 relevant in the context of the patent law framework.

9 We, however, would not accept Mr. Miller's or
10 object -- we would object to Mr. Miller's offering any
11 opinion on the likelihood of the outcome or the likely
12 outcome of this litigation for two reasons.

13 The first reason is that that kind of testimony
14 is attorney argument. It is not expert witness
15 testimony to be offered from the witness stand. It's
16 essentially closing argument in the Schering patent and
17 ESI patent case. We would -- if Mr. Lavelle would like
18 to offer that kind of closing argument, we would not
19 object to that, but we do object to the idea of an
20 attorney being on the witness stand making legal
21 arguments for a client.

22 We also would object to the idea that Mr.
23 Miller can offer some kind of assessment of the likely
24 outcome of this patent case separate from the idea of
25 advocacy legal arguments for his client simply because

1 such testimony cannot be reliable. Mr. Miller's
2 admitted he has no information on how Judge DuBois
3 would have decided this case, and, in fact, he's not
4 even trying to offer that kind of testimony. He's
5 simply giving his own views on who would have won this
6 patent case. That's attorney argument, and it's not
7 reliable.

8 It's not reliable because Mr. Miller doesn't
9 have the right kind of information to actually address
10 the point and also because patent litigation is
11 unpredictable. There's no way -- Mr. Miller can't
12 satisfy the Daubert criteria here. He can't -- this
13 technique of reading a written record and then
14 predicting the likely outcome of a patent case has
15 never been tested as reliable. It can't be tested,
16 because we can never know how this case would have
17 turned out.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Response?

19 MR. LAVELLE: Yes, Your Honor, thank you.

20 As you know, Your Honor, we are offering as
21 evidence and have been these past couple days evidence
22 related to the objective merit of the ESI case.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You haven't been offering
24 legal opinions in evidence.

25 MR. LAVELLE: There has been quite a bit of

1 testimony about legal issues already, and today, we
2 propose to call Mr. Miller to give some legal opinions
3 as a part of summarizing the evidence and the issues
4 that were likely to resolve the ESI case. His
5 technique is one that courts use every day, and the
6 technique of reviewing a written record and determining
7 the likelihood of outcome of the case is precisely what
8 district courts do on submitted records, what courts of
9 appeals do when they review records.

10 His methodology is simply one of gathering the
11 facts and applying the applicable law. It is -- it is
12 generally accepted for 200 years in this country, and
13 it's what courts and judges and patent lawyers do. It
14 is relevant testimony to this case, because we are
15 offering it to show a comparison of the merits of the
16 patent case to the split of the term in the ESI
17 settlement.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: How do you test the
19 reliability of the principles and methods of his
20 opinion?

21 MR. LAVELLE: You test it by asking, as they
22 did extensively in his deposition, if he has considered
23 the appropriate facts and applied the law correctly.

24 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. What opinions is he
25 going to offer?

1 MR. LAVELLE: He is -- the ultimate opinions
2 that --

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Not what opinion but opinions.
4 How many opinions -- I just want categories. Give me
5 categories of opinions that you're planning to offer
6 with this witness.

7 MR. LAVELLE: Likely outcome of the
8 infringement issue; likely outcome of the entire case;
9 and how the likely outcome of the case compares to the
10 split of the patent life in the ESI settlement.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, I've re-reviewed the
12 complaint counsel's motion in limine and I've
13 re-reviewed your response, and you didn't cite any
14 authority, not one case, that says that any court
15 accepts legal opinions, and whether you did or not,
16 that's not important right now. I will not accept
17 legal opinions from a witness. Legal opinions are not
18 evidence at all.

19 As complaint counsel has already stated, I
20 agree with her, that's a place to be made -- that's to
21 be made in argument. I will not accept legal opinions
22 from an expert witness. Any other opinions that you
23 think are sufficient, I think they've agreed to not
24 object to patent type opinions, but legal opinions are
25 excluded.

1 MR. LAVELLE: Okay, thank you, Your Honor.

2 We'll proceed.

3 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, can I seek a point of
4 clarification? I understand an opinion on the likely
5 outcome of the patent litigation to be a legal opinion.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: To me, Ms. Michel, a legal
7 opinion is as a matter of law somebody won or somebody
8 lost or somebody would have lost. For what it's worth,
9 which isn't much, when an attorney wants to tell me I
10 looked at the file and I think somebody would have won,
11 I'm going to allow that, and I'm going to give it the
12 weight it deserves.

13 Any other clarification you need?

14 MS. MICHEL: I apologize, Your Honor, but I'm
15 afraid so.

16 So, Mr. Miller is allowed to testify on who he
17 believed would have won the patent litigation?

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I am going to allow him, if
19 proper foundation is laid, to tell us who he thinks
20 would have won, but I am going to give it the weight it
21 deserves.

22 MS. MICHEL: I understand Schering to be making
23 some distinctions between this question of who would
24 have won and the likely outcome of the patent
25 litigation. I --

1 JUDGE CHAPPELL: If it's a -- if it's a legal
2 opinion on -- as a matter of law, one side would have
3 won or the other, that's a legal opinion, I'm going to
4 disregard that, and if you have any doubts, you're free
5 to object during the testimony.

6 MS. MICHEL: Thank you, Your Honor.

7 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And you may take your copies
8 of the motions back.

9 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You may proceed.

11 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, for the record, is
12 Mr. Miller accepted as an expert subject to the
13 qualifications you stated on the record?

14 MS. MICHEL: No -- well, could I hear the
15 proffer restated, please?

16 MR. LAVELLE: I would just ask that Mr. Miller
17 be qualified as an expert in patent law and the
18 evaluation of patent litigation subject to the guidance
19 and direction the Court has provided and limitations
20 that the Court has provided.

21 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, he's accepted with the
22 limitations I've just gone over.

23 MS. MICHEL: Thank you.

24 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You may proceed.

25 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor.

1 DIRECT EXAMINATION (cont)

2 BY MR. LAVELLE:

3 Q. Mr. Miller, do you have Schering Exhibit SPX
4 194 in your book, please?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And would you tell us once again what that
7 document is?

8 A. This is a certified copy of U.S. Patent
9 4,863,743, which was the patent that was in suit in the
10 Key v. ESI litigation.

11 Q. Very good, sir.

12 How does a patent holder secure a patent?

13 A. By filing a patent application in the United
14 States Patent and Trademark Office.

15 Q. And who issues the patent?

16 A. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, which is
17 a branch of the U.S. Commerce Department.

18 Q. Very good.

19 Where does Congress get the authority to issue
20 and grant patents?

21 A. It has a statutory authority to grant patents
22 under the U.S. Constitution, and in particular, Article
23 I, Section 8, Clause 8.

24 Q. I'd like to show you Schering Exhibit SPX 2155.
25 Do you have 2155, sir?

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. What is this excerpt?

3 A. This is an excerpt of the portion of the
4 Constitution that I just referred to, Article I,
5 Section 8, and it's Clause 8.

6 Q. And it gave Congress the authority to create
7 the patent system. Is that correct?

8 A. Yes. This clause is the enabling clause that
9 authorizes Congress to legislate in the area of patents
10 and trademark -- and copyrights, sorry.

11 Q. When did Congress first exercise its authority
12 to create a patent system?

13 A. I believe the U.S. Patent System was
14 established in or around 1790 through the establishment
15 of the U.S. Patent Office.

16 Q. Who examined the first U.S. patent
17 applications?

18 A. One of the first if not the first and sole
19 patent examiner at the time was Thomas Jefferson. He
20 was the Secretary of State at the time.

21 Q. And who signed the first patent that the United
22 States issued?

23 A. Patents at that time were signed by the
24 President of the United States, so the first patent
25 that would have issued in the early 1790s would have

1 been signed by George Washington.

2 Q. Thank you.

3 Sir, go back to SPX 194, if you would, please.

4 Oh, by the way, how many patents has -- have
5 been issued in the United States since President
6 Washington signed the first one?

7 A. Well, the current numbering of patents takes us
8 well over I believe it's 6000 -- 6 million, I'm sorry,
9 I misspoke, 6 million patents. A number of patents
10 were issued prior to 1835 I believe possibly on a
11 different numbering system, but many of those patents
12 are now lost.

13 Q. Would you go back to Schering Exhibit 194,
14 please. A patent has two principal parts. Is that
15 right?

16 A. Yes, it has a -- it has what is known as a
17 specification, which comprises two main parts. One is
18 the description of the invention, and the other part is
19 the claims.

20 Q. Okay, and I think there's no dispute that in
21 this case the specification are the number of
22 paragraphs beginning with -- or columns beginning with
23 column 1. Is that right?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And the claims begin in column 8?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And they're the numbered paragraphs 1 through
3 12, correct?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. What is the function of the specification of a
6 patent?

7 A. The function of the specification is to
8 describe the invention in clear, concise and exact
9 terms to enable one of ordinary skill -- of skill in
10 the art to which the invention pertains to carry out
11 the invention, and I'm quoting to some extent the
12 specific statute in the patent laws that defines what
13 the specification is in terms of a descriptive portion.

14 Q. Okay. And what is the function of the claims?

15 A. The claims are to define the invention in such
16 clear and such -- the invention is defined in the
17 claims in such a way that it particularly points out
18 and distinctly defines the subject matter that the
19 owner of the patent defines or considers to be the
20 invention and is patented.

21 Q. What exclusive rights does a patent give to its
22 owner?

23 A. The exclusive rights that the patent owner has
24 under a U.S. patent is the exclusive right to make, to
25 use, to vend -- that is to say, to sell or offer to

1 sell -- and to import the subject matter of the
2 invention that is covered by the claim.

3 Q. Is the exclusive right of the patent defined by
4 what's in the specification or what's in the claim?

5 A. By what is in the claims.

6 Q. Okay. And those examples that are in the '743
7 patent, do they limit or define the exclusive rights of
8 the patent?

9 A. No, they do not.

10 Q. Claims do that?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Thank you.

13 How long will this '743 patent be in force,
14 sir? When will it expire, in other words?

15 A. The patent will expire in September of 2006,
16 which is 17 years from the issue date of this patent.

17 Q. Is filing an abbreviated new drug application
18 an act of technical infringement in some cases?

19 A. Yes, it's considered to be an act of technical
20 infringement as opposed to a tortious act of
21 infringement of the type that I explained before. It
22 is provided for in a separate portion of Section 271 of
23 the patent statute.

24 Q. Okay. And under what circumstances is filing
25 an ANDA an act of patent infringement?

1 A. When an ANDA is filed with the Food and Drug
2 Administration seeking marketing approval for the drug
3 in question prior to the expiration of the patent, then
4 that sets up the fact pattern for an infringement
5 action, and that is what the exclusive rights pertain
6 to.

7 Q. Thank you, sir.

8 Before we talk about the litigation, let's talk
9 for just a minute about how a patent holder goes about
10 receiving the patent. How do you go about applying for
11 a patent?

12 A. The inventor, usually through his attorney, a
13 patent attorney, will submit to the U.S. Patent Office
14 a patent application which contains several parts, the
15 primary part of which is what we just discussed, which
16 is the specification, including the claims, and in some
17 cases a drawing is appropriate, which is not the case
18 here, together with a fee and a declaration by the
19 inventors concerning certain aspects of the making of
20 the invention.

21 Q. And what does the United States Patent Office
22 do with these applications?

23 A. The United States Patent Office, since the
24 United States is, among all countries in the world, is
25 what is called an examining country, will in the Patent

1 and Trademark Office assign the patent application to
2 an examiner who will test the patent application
3 against a number of criteria which the patent law sets
4 forth in determining whether or not to grant the
5 patent.

6 Q. Are these patent examiners technically trained
7 individuals?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. And typically what sort of expertise do the
10 patent examiners have in the art that they work in?

11 A. Well, examiners are usually hired on the basis
12 of their technical qualifications in a particular
13 field, and I understand that the Patent Office has
14 certain criteria that it looks to in this regard, and I
15 would say generally a patent examiner will have, at the
16 minimum, a Bachelor's Degree in engineering or in one
17 of the physical sciences.

18 Q. Very good, sir.

19 I'd like to show you a Schering exhibit, SPX
20 676.

21 Your Honor, may I approach the witness?

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

23 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor.

24 (Pause in the proceedings.)

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, Mr. Lavelle, you may

1 proceed.

2 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor.

3 BY MR. LAVELLE:

4 Q. Do you have Schering Exhibit 667 in front of
5 you, Mr. Miller?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. What is this document?

8 A. This is a copy of the application record of the
9 prosecution proceedings in the U.S. Patent and
10 Trademark Office that matured into the issuance of the
11 '743 patent. We call it the file history or the
12 prosecution history of the patent.

13 Q. Very good.

14 And what does the prosecution history or the
15 file history of the '743 patent contain?

16 A. Well, it contains initially the application
17 itself, which must include the specification and the
18 set of initial claims, and then it goes on to include
19 copies of exchanges of communications between the
20 applicant's representative and the examiner during the
21 course of the examination process of the application.

22 Q. Were you present yesterday in Court when Mr.
23 Nolan put various excerpts from amendments and the like
24 on the screen?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. Are those amendments the type of documents that
2 are contained in the file history?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Thank you, sir.

5 What do patent lawyers do with this file
6 history?

7 A. Well, in terms of the patent lawyer for a third
8 party who is going to assess the merits of the patent
9 itself, he must examine the prosecution record, this
10 document (indicating) in the case of the '743 patent.

11 Q. And why is that?

12 A. Why is that?

13 Q. Yeah. Why do you consult this in determining
14 sort of what's important about this issue?

15 A. There's information contained or may be
16 contained in a prosecution record that is relevant to
17 issues of -- that may be relevant to issues of
18 infringement or validity.

19 Q. If the patent holder believes his patent is
20 infringed, what recourse does he have?

21 A. Basically his recourse is to an action -- a
22 civil action in Federal District Court. There is a
23 specific statutory provision for that, and I believe it
24 is Section 281 of the patent statute.

25 Q. Okay. Is there any other way to enforce a

1 patent other than filing a lawsuit?

2 A. Not really.

3 Q. What does a patent holder have to prove to
4 prove his case in patent infringement litigation?

5 A. There are two things that the patent owner,
6 that is to say the party asserting the patent, must
7 establish by way of proof; that is, the ownership of
8 the patent be in itself, so that the party asserting
9 the patent has standing to bring the action, and
10 second, a patent owner must persuade the court that the
11 patent has been infringed.

12 Q. Very good, thank you, sir.

13 What relief does -- is the patent holder
14 normally entitled to if it wins the patent case at
15 trial?

16 A. Normally, in cases of tortious infringement
17 under Section 271-A, the patent owner, if he prevails
18 in the litigation, will be entitled to damages and may,
19 and in most cases will be, awarded an injunction
20 against further infringement of the patent.

21 Q. Okay. And when the infringement is a technical
22 infringement under Section 271-E of the patent
23 statute --

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. -- what relief is the patent holder normally

1 entitled to?

2 A. If he prevails, then he is normally entitled to
3 a judgment in which the approval of the ANDA will be
4 withheld until the patent expires, so that in effect,
5 the prevailing patent owner will be able to preclude or
6 essentially enjoin the marketing of that product until
7 the patent expires.

8 Q. What defenses can a defendant assert in patent
9 litigation generally?

10 A. Generally that the patent, first and foremost,
11 is not infringed if it's an infringement action, that
12 the patent is invalid, that the patent perhaps is
13 unenforceable for one or more reasons.

14 Q. And what burden does the law place on a
15 defendant who wants to challenge the validity or
16 enforceability of a patent?

17 A. The burden on the party challenging a patent in
18 terms of its validity is a burden that rises to the
19 level of clear and convincing evidence.

20 Q. Okay, thank you, sir.

21 Is it possible to assess the likely outcome of
22 patent litigation?

23 A. Yes, I believe so.

24 Q. How precise can one be in assessing the likely
25 outcome of patent litigation?

1 A. One cannot be 100 percent precise; however, one
2 can be precise to a high degree of reliability
3 depending upon the materials with which he has to work
4 with.

5 Q. Well, first of all, why is 100 percent
6 precision impossible?

7 A. Because there are elements of consideration
8 that are not available, would not be available to
9 someone before the trial. The -- the demeanor evidence
10 exhibited by witnesses on the stand, the quality of the
11 advocacy, the biases of the judge, these are elements
12 that would prevent a 100 percent precision in assessing
13 the outcome of a patent infringement litigation.

14 Q. And accepting that, would you explain why it is
15 possible nonetheless to be fairly precise in your
16 evaluation?

17 A. In my evaluation, I was presented with
18 essentially the record that would have been presented
19 to the court in determining the outcome of that case.
20 This was a Bench trial; it was not a jury trial. It
21 was to be a Bench trial, and attorneys who routinely
22 advise clients on the basis of their assessment of the
23 likely outcomes of litigation I believe are well
24 equipped to objectively assess the likely outcome of a
25 litigation, and I would point out that my assignment in

1 this case was to objectively assess how this case would
2 have turned out had it gone to trial on the basis of
3 what is essentially the record that would have been
4 before the judge.

5 Q. Okay, let's talk about that a little bit.
6 Could I have SPX 2039, please, if we can talk about
7 this, please, let's just orient ourselves a little bit.

8 Okay, the ESI case was filed -- do you remember
9 when it was filed, Mr. Miller?

10 A. It was filed I believe in early 1996.

11 Q. And as we've heard, it was pending before Judge
12 DuBois?

13 A. In the Eastern District of Pennsylvania in
14 Philadelphia, yes.

15 Q. And just for the record, would you identify
16 which claims were at issue in the ESI litigation?

17 A. The claims that were at issue and that would
18 have been the subject of the infringement case had it
19 gone to trial were claims 1 and claims 5 through 8.

20 Q. Okay, thank you, sir.

21 And they are the numbered paragraphs 1 and 5
22 through 8 at the back of the '743 patent?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Is it adequate for or purposes today to just
25 talk about claim 1?

1 A. Yes, claim 1 is a -- is the broadest claim in
2 the patent. And certainly relative to the other
3 claims, 5, 6, 7 and 8, yes, it would be typical and
4 sufficient to focus our attention on claim 1.

5 Q. Okay. The ESI case was resolved in January of
6 '98 after a claim construction hearing?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. Okay. And we've heard some testimony about
9 that claim construction hearing yesterday, correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. What relief was Schering seeking in the ESI
12 case?

13 A. Well, as I mentioned before, Schering was
14 seeking to exclude the marketing approval and
15 consequently the marketing of the product that was the
16 subject of ESI's ANDA, and that product I believe was
17 called Micro-K tablets of potassium chloride.

18 Q. Very good.

19 What relief would Schering/Key have received if
20 they won the patent case?

21 A. If Key had won the patent case, they would
22 have -- they would have obtained a judgment pursuant to
23 which the court would have ordered the -- either the
24 post -- either the deferral of the approval of the ANDA
25 until the expiry of the patent if the ANDA had not yet

1 received approval, or if it had received approval, then
2 the court would have enjoined the carrying out of the
3 marketing of that product until the expiration of the
4 '743 patent.

5 Q. Very good.

6 You've told us what you were asked to do in
7 this case. Would you tell us or summarize at least for
8 us the materials that you reviewed in attempting to
9 reach an objective assessment of the merits of this
10 case?

11 A. What I reviewed -- and these were contained, I
12 will say, in about six banker's boxes that were
13 provided to me by Schering, you, sir, but a number of
14 items beginning with the claims -- I'm sorry, the
15 patent itself, the prosecution record of the patent,
16 ESI's Paragraph IV certification which set the
17 groundwork for the institution of the patent
18 infringement litigation, the pleadings in the case in
19 terms of the complaint and answer.

20 There were a number of interrogatories that
21 were propounded in the case which I reviewed, and there
22 were a number of motions, reports submitted in
23 connection with those motions, exhibits associated with
24 them, and a number of depositions taken during pretrial
25 discovery.

1 Q. Did you read any hearing transcripts?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And did you review the or did you consider the
4 transcript of the Markman hearing?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Thank you, sir.

7 Did you attend any of the depositions of
8 technical witnesses in this FTC proceeding?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Did you undertake any independent legal
11 research in connection with forming your opinion?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Would you explain that for us, please?

14 A. When I reviewed the materials that were
15 provided to me and was able to focus on what I
16 considered to be the issues triable in the case, most
17 notably infringement, I conducted my own legal research
18 on what the state of the law was during the period of
19 the pendency of the action, and most particularly, what
20 the state of the law would have been at the time the
21 case would have been decided.

22 Q. Okay, thank you.

23 Did you reach an overall conclusion as to the
24 likely outcome of the ESI case if it went to trial?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. And what was your conclusion?

2 A. My conclusion, based on my objective assessment
3 of both sides of the case, was that Key had a very
4 strong case.

5 Q. Okay, thank you, sir.

6 Was there any issue that was the sort of
7 overarching or dispositive issue in the ESI case based
8 on your review?

9 A. The overarching or -- the most material issue
10 in the case was that of infringement.

11 Q. Okay. Now, before we talk about infringement,
12 were there other issues, in fact, in the case?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And would you explain first of all what other
15 defenses ESI was asserting?

16 A. As I recall, ESI interposed defenses of patent
17 invalidity, unenforceability on grounds of inequitable
18 conduct. There may have been some other bases for
19 their defenses. These are typically pleaded in in most
20 patent cases. You must plead them if you're going to
21 prove them, so it was not surprising that these were
22 defenses that were interposed in the case.

23 Q. Did you evaluate the merit of ESI's defenses
24 other than the infringement defense?

25 A. I looked at all the defenses that were pleaded

1 in the case by ESI, yes.

2 Q. Okay. And what did you -- what conclusion did
3 you reach with respect to those other defenses?

4 A. The conclusion I reached was that these
5 defenses would not have been material to the ultimate
6 outcome of the case, that the overarching -- the issue
7 would have been -- that was material to how the case
8 would have been decided was the question of
9 infringement.

10 Q. Sir, did Schering have a claim for damages in
11 the ESI case?

12 A. Yes, there was a -- there was a claim for
13 damages on the grounds or on the basis of ESI's --
14 well, one of its affiliate's production of an
15 intermediate material in the United States, which was
16 then allegedly shipped to a foreign country, and I
17 believe it was Egypt, for assembly into the final
18 product, perhaps the tablets themselves, and subsequent
19 shipment and sale elsewhere outside the United States.

20 I have to say that this case was not one that I
21 thought Schering had a very or Key had a very good
22 position in. I saw very little, if anything, in the
23 way of the necessary proofs of damages that they would
24 have had to adduce, you know, at the threshold of the
25 trial. So, I didn't think that was a position that Key

1 had a very strong case.

2 Q. Did you think that Key was likely to succeed on
3 its damages claim?

4 A. I don't think so, because if the evidence that
5 I saw would have been presented to the court, that
6 there was issues not only as to where are the damages
7 shown, I didn't see any evidence of that, and secondly,
8 there was an issue as to whether the microcapsules --
9 the intermediate product that ESI was producing -- and
10 this was an issue in the case, I can't speak to whether
11 or not it was the fact -- whether or not the amount of
12 the ethylcellulose -- and I will use the word EC as an
13 acronym to simplify the pronunciation -- was there in
14 sufficient quantity to come within the scope of the
15 claim. That was an issue in the case, I believe.

16 Q. Let's then put that damages claim aside and
17 turn to what you identified as the overarching issue,
18 okay?

19 A. All right.

20 Q. And that was the infringement issue?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Okay. What is the first step in resolving the
23 infringement issue in the ESI case?

24 A. The first step in resolving the infringement
25 issue in the ESI case, as in any case, was the -- would

1 have been the construction of the claims, and most
2 notably, as we just discussed a few minutes ago, claim
3 1 of the patent.

4 Q. Okay. And whose job was it to construe the
5 claim?

6 A. Claim construction is a matter of or an issue
7 of law that must be decided by the court.

8 Q. Okay. And we heard testimony yesterday and saw
9 excerpts from something called a Markman hearing.

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Do you recall that?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Would you explain what a Markman hearing is?

14 A. A Markman hearing, first of all, is named after
15 a case, Markman vs. Westview Instruments, a case
16 decided by -- it was either the Federal Circuit or the
17 U.S. Supreme Court, I don't remember at the moment, but
18 it was decided in the mid-1990s where the Court held
19 that the construction of a claim must be the initial
20 inquiry that a court makes in determining the
21 infringement issue, and that construction must be done
22 by the court, and it cannot be addressed by the jury.

23 There was no jury in this case, but in many
24 patent trials there are juries, and in years past there
25 was some debate as to whether the jury as a matter of

1 fact or the court as an issue of law should interpret
2 the claim.

3 The law, as it was during the period of this
4 litigation, had been settled by the Markman case. It
5 is the court that must construe the claims, and a
6 Markman hearing is the kind of proceeding that is
7 conducted by the court to receive evidence and argument
8 in that regard.

9 Q. Okay. And was -- there was a Markman hearing
10 in the ESI case, right?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Okay. And what type of evidence -- what
13 issue -- as to what issue -- strike that, let me start
14 over.

15 As to what issue was evidence and argument
16 received in the Markman hearing?

17 A. In general or specifically?

18 Q. In general.

19 A. Well, there was evidence as to the question as
20 to does the -- what does the claim mean in terms of the
21 recitations in that claim. Throughout the Markman
22 hearing, the focus of attention was on the meaning of
23 the claim in the context of a term that appeared in
24 claim 1, which was the term "coating material."

25 Q. Very good.

1 Would you turn to Schering Exhibit SPX 2040,
2 please. Do you recognize this claim chart, Mr. Miller?

3 A. This is a claim chart, yes.

4 Q. Okay. And on the left side of this claim chart
5 is the patent. Is that right?

6 A. The left-hand column is a series of paragraphs
7 which are taken from claim 1. Claim 1 itself reads as
8 a run-on paragraph, and to facilitate a comprehension
9 of what the claim covers, it is common to separate the
10 claim into its component elements.

11 Q. Okay. And of all of those elements listed
12 under claim 1, would you explain which ones the court
13 had to construe at the Markman hearing in this case?

14 A. Well, the court has to construe all of the
15 elements of the claim in order to properly construe the
16 claim. As I said, though, the focus of the hearing
17 devolved upon the meaning of the term "coating
18 material," because that was the contentious issue with
19 the -- the main contentious if not the primary
20 contentious issue on the issue of infringement.

21 Q. Was there at the Markman hearing a dispute
22 about any part of this claim other than the words "a
23 coating material"?

24 A. I don't believe so.

25 Q. Okay. And just if we could briefly review, the

1 first box that begins, "A pharmaceutical dosage unit in
2 tablet form," do you see that?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Do patent lawyers have a name for that part of
5 the claim?

6 A. That's called the preamble.

7 Q. Okay. Was there any dispute between the
8 parties as to what the terms in preamble meant?

9 A. No, there was not.

10 Q. And was there any dispute that ESI's product
11 complied with the preamble?

12 A. There was no dispute in that regard.

13 Q. Okay. The first element of the claim in the
14 next box, "a plurality of coated potassium chloride
15 crystals," and it goes on, do you see where I am?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Was there any dispute between the parties as to
18 the meaning of any word in that element?

19 A. No.

20 Q. Was there any dispute between the parties that
21 that element was present in the ESI product?

22 A. No.

23 Q. Okay, going down to the next box, the "coating
24 material" box?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. Was there any dispute about any word in that
2 element other than the three words, "a coating
3 material"?

4 A. No.

5 Q. And was there any dispute that ESI's product
6 contained ethylcellulose in the amount required by the
7 claim?

8 A. No, there was no dispute on that amount.

9 Q. Going down to the next box, the HPC or the PEG?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Was there any dispute between the parties about
12 any term in that claim element?

13 A. With regard to the word
14 "hydroxypropylcellulose"?

15 Q. With regard to any portion of that claim
16 element, "at least one member selected from the group,"
17 was there any dispute about any of the words in that
18 element?

19 A. There was no dispute on any of those terms in
20 the context of the Markman hearing.

21 Q. And was there any dispute that ESI's product
22 contained HPC in the amount the claim requires?

23 A. No, there was no dispute in that regard.

24 Q. Okay. And the final element is, "said
25 ethylcellulose has a viscosity greater than 40 cp."

1 Was there any dispute about any of those words?

2 A. No, there was not.

3 Q. And was there any dispute that ESI's product
4 met that claim limitation?

5 A. No dispute.

6 Q. So, what the court had to do was figure out
7 what the words "a coating material" mean?

8 A. That's where the focus of the court's attention
9 ended up.

10 Q. In the Markman hearing?

11 A. In the Markman hearing, yes, sir.

12 Q. Would you explain to us the rules that you go
13 through in understanding what a claim term means?

14 A. The rule on claim interpretation with
15 respect -- and particularly with respect to what a
16 particular term means is that you must consider the
17 claim in its plain meaning, and therefore, what is the
18 plain meaning of the term "a coating material" in the
19 claim. If the meaning is plain and clear on its face,
20 and if it's a technical term, it would be proper for
21 the court to refer to technical dictionaries for a
22 definition of the term, and if that is plain, the
23 meaning is plain, then you do not need to go any
24 further unless there is something in the specification
25 of the patent -- that is to say, the descriptive

1 portion of the specification -- or something that was
2 made of record during the prosecution of the patent
3 application that would be found in the prosecution
4 history of the patent that would contradict that plain
5 meaning of the claim, and those three sources of
6 information, the claim itself, the descriptive portion
7 of the specification and the prosecution history, are
8 what are called the intrinsic evidences of what the
9 claim means.

10 Q. Thank you, sir.

11 Are claims limited to the examples in the
12 specification?

13 A. No.

14 Q. Okay. We heard testimony about some of the
15 examples in the '743 patent that show a coating
16 mixture.

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Do those examples limit the scope of claim 1?

19 A. No, they do not.

20 Q. Okay. And why not?

21 A. Because that is not the function of an example
22 in a descriptive portion of a patent specification.
23 The -- as I said before, the specification requires
24 that the inventor describe the invention in a way that
25 enables someone to carry out the invention but not

1 necessarily the only way of carrying out the invention.
2 And also, it is a way of fulfilling the requirement
3 that the inventor inform the public through the patent
4 grant that he was in possession of an invention within
5 the scope of the claims at the time that he filed his
6 application.

7 Q. Thank you.

8 Does the inventor have to disclose every single
9 possible, conceivable way of practicing his invention
10 to get a patent?

11 A. He's not required by law, because it is
12 generally impossible for an inventor to do so.

13 Q. Can the claims sometimes be broader than the
14 examples in the specification?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Would you tell us a little bit about what
17 relevance technical dictionaries have in claim
18 construction?

19 A. Well, when looking at a -- the language of the
20 claim itself in order to ascertain whether or not its
21 meaning is plain and clear on its face, resort to
22 technical dictionaries for the source of the definition
23 of a technical term is proper for a court to do.

24 Q. Would you turn to SPX 2042 for a moment,
25 please. This is that Dictionary of Pharmacy that we

1 looked at with the technical experts. Do you recall
2 that?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Would you explain how a court is supposed to
5 consult a technical dictionary or what use a technical
6 dictionary is put to in connection with interpreting
7 the claims?

8 A. Well, the term "coating material" in this
9 context is clearly a -- is certainly a technical term,
10 and referral or reference to technical dictionaries
11 published at the time, as this one was, serves that
12 purpose.

13 Q. All right. Sir, did you reach a conclusion as
14 to how a properly instructed court would have construed
15 the term "a coating material" in the ESI case?

16 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor. I think
17 that calls for speculation on what a court would have
18 determined. I think based on our earlier discussion,
19 Mr. Miller can give his own view of how he thinks this
20 claim should be determined, but he would only be
21 speculating to conclude on what a court would have
22 determined.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You mean based on my earlier
24 ruling?

25 MS. MICHEL: That, Your Honor, and also I

1 believe the question calls for speculation.

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Sustained.

3 BY MR. LAVELLE:

4 Q. Did you reach a view of your own about how the
5 word "coating material" should properly be construed?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Would you explain that construction to us,
8 please.

9 A. I came to the conclusion that the term "coating
10 material" in claim 1 of the '743 patent covered the
11 components of the coating material -- namely, HPC and
12 EC -- either in one or more layers.

13 Q. And would you explain how you reached that
14 conclusion?

15 A. Well, the -- I interpreted the -- I understood,
16 based on assessing the submissions by both sides in
17 this case and particularly from this dictionary
18 definition and plain reading of the claim, that there
19 was nothing in the patent specification description,
20 nor in the prosecution record, that would suggest a
21 narrow interpretation of the term "coating material."
22 To me, "a coating material" is a term that we call
23 generic to one or more variants of what a coating can
24 be.

25 "Generic" is a term that patent lawyers use to

1 distinguish the specific. There are specific coatings.
2 A coating can be a mixture of the components or it can
3 be the components in one or more layers. There is no
4 recitation in the claim itself that would lead me to
5 conclude that one must construe this claim in terms of
6 what the coating material is other than to be one or
7 more layers of the materials that comprise the coating.

8 Q. If the term "coating material" is construed as
9 covering a coating with one or more layers, what is the
10 outcome of the infringement issue in the ESI case?

11 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, again, I think the
12 question is somewhat unclear in the issue of whether or
13 not it's calling for Mr. Miller's personal opinion or
14 whether it's calling for the outcome of that particular
15 litigation, and I would object for that reason.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: It calls for a legal opinion.
17 Objection sustained.

18 BY MR. LAVELLE:

19 Q. If the term "coating material" is construed to
20 cover one or more layers --

21 A. Right.

22 Q. -- do you have an opinion as to whether or not
23 all of the elements of claim 1 of the patent are
24 present in ESI's product?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. And what is your opinion?

2 A. My opinion is that all of the elements of the
3 ESI product would satisfy the claim language of claim
4 1, including the word "coating material."

5 Q. Okay. And what -- if "coating material" were
6 construed to cover one or more layers, what is your
7 opinion on the likely outcome of the infringement case
8 in the ESI litigation?

9 A. Based on my --

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Hold it, you're instructed not
11 to answer that. I'm not allowing that, Mr. Lavelle.

12 MR. LAVELLE: All right, I apologize, Your
13 Honor.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: That's a legal opinion dressed
15 up in other clothes. I'm not allowing it. Move along.

16 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor. I
17 apologize. I thought you were going to allow it and
18 give it whatever weight it was accorded. That's the
19 only reason I went there, Your Honor. I'll move on.

20 BY MR. LAVELLE:

21 Q. Did you attempt -- let me ask you then to
22 consider the hypothetical where claim 1 is construed to
23 require a mixture.

24 A. All right.

25 Q. Do you understand that?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Did you attempt to assess what -- and review
3 the evidence as to whether or not there was, in fact,
4 mixing in the ESI case?

5 A. Yes, I did.

6 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I'll object to any
7 line of questioning asking Mr. Miller to give his
8 opinion on whether or not there was any mixing. He's
9 been qualified as an expert in patent law and not
10 qualified as a technical expert on issues of
11 pharmaceutical coating materials. It would be outside
12 his scope of expertise to give an opinion on this
13 issue.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Sustained.

15 BY MR. LAVELLE:

16 Q. Did you attempt -- are you familiar with the
17 dispute that was raised --

18 Your Honor, could I have a minute, please?

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

20 (Counsel conferring.)

21 BY MR. LAVELLE:

22 Q. While you were here in Court, did you hear Dr.
23 Langer and Dr. Banker testify as to their opinions
24 about whether or not the coating material in the ESI
25 product were, in fact, mixed?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And you heard them testify that in their
3 opinion, the coating material was, in fact, mixed?

4 A. The coating material in the ESI --

5 Q. ESI product.

6 A. -- product, yes.

7 Q. If Dr. Langer and Dr. Banker's opinions that
8 there is, in fact, mixing is accepted as correct --

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. -- what was the likely outcome of the
11 infringement issue in the ESI case?

12 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor, calls for
13 speculation and also a legal conclusion.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: This witness is not going to
15 give this Court an opinion on the likely outcome, Mr.
16 Lavelle. Is that clear?

17 MR. LAVELLE: It is, Your Honor.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Proceed. Sustained.

19 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor.

20 BY MR. LAVELLE:

21 Q. Sir, let me show you Schering Exhibit SPX 2060,
22 please.

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. I'm sorry, that's not what I want to show you.
25 Would you turn to SPX 93, please.

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Do you recognize this document, sir?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And what is that?

5 A. This is a copy of the settlement agreement
6 between Key and Upsher that was entered into -- I
7 believe it was during the month of June 1998.

8 Q. Did you attempt to determine when that
9 settlement agreement permitted ESI to get a license to
10 practice the patent?

11 MR. CURRAN: May I ask for the prior answer to
12 be read back, please?

13 (The record was read as follows:)

14 "ANSWER: This is a copy of the settlement
15 agreement between Key and Upsher that was entered
16 into -- I believe it was during the month of June
17 1998."

18 BY MR. LAVELLE:

19 Q. Would you take a look at that and just review
20 who the parties are to that agreement, please.

21 A. The parties to the agreement are Key
22 Pharmaceuticals, the plaintiff in the action, and ESI
23 Lederle or ESI.

24 Q. When you said Upsher, did you just misspeak?

25 A. Did I say Upsher? I'm sorry, I misspoke.

1 Q. This is a settlement agreement between --

2 A. Key and ESI in settlement of the ESI litigation
3 that we have been discussing.

4 Q. And when does this agreement grant a license to
5 ESI to practice the patent?

6 A. It's granted a license to ESI to introduce its
7 generic version of the KCl tablets, I believe it was in
8 January of 2004.

9 Q. Okay. And now could we go to 2060, please.

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. What does Exhibit 2060 depict, sir?

12 A. This is a time line depicting the events or
13 depicting the -- actually the split of the remaining
14 life of the '743 patent from January 1998, which was
15 the month when an agreement in principle was arrived at
16 between Key and ESI, and the expiry of the patent in
17 September of 2006, and it shows that in January of
18 2004, ESI would be permitted to enter the market with
19 its Micro-K 20 product under the settlement agreement.

20 Q. And how much sooner does ESI get on the market
21 under this settlement agreement than if the patent were
22 found valid and infringed?

23 A. Approximately 30 to 32 months.

24 Q. Did you attempt to compare the split of the
25 patent life in the ESI license agreement to the likely

1 outcome of the litigation?

2 A. Yes, I did.

3 Q. Okay. And would you tell us how -- would you
4 tell us, sir, if you reached a conclusion as to how the
5 split of the patent life compares to the likely outcome
6 of the litigation?

7 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor. For Mr.
8 Miller to render an opinion on that issue would be
9 effectively for him to be giving an opinion on the
10 likely outcome of the patent litigation. For him to
11 say something along the lines of that there was a 75
12 percent chance of Schering winning, therefore this 75
13 percent yellow bar was appropriate is effectively
14 saying -- giving an opinion on the likely outcome.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Response?

16 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, what the witness is
17 going to testify to is the ultimate question of whether
18 or not the split of the patent life fairly reflects or
19 is more favorable to consumers than would be the likely
20 outcome of the litigation. That's what I'm going to
21 ask him.

22 MS. MICHEL: Two further objections in that
23 case, Your Honor. First, I believe that opinion would
24 call for speculation on the likely outcome of the
25 actual ESI litigation rather than any opinion of Mr.

1 Miller.

2 A second point, Your Honor, to the extent that
3 Mr. Miller connects that opinion to the benefit to
4 consumers, he's now outside the scope of his expertise.
5 He's effectively giving an opinion on the -- whether or
6 not the agreement is a benefit to consumers. He has no
7 expertise in economics or antitrust law.

8 MR. LAVELLE: Let me pose the question in a way
9 that I think will cure the objection, Your Honor.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: So, you're withdrawing your
11 question?

12 MR. LAVELLE: I will withdraw my question and
13 attempt to pose one that I think is -- cures that
14 concern.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Then you're withdrawing the
16 objection?

17 MS. MICHEL: I'll withdraw the objection
18 because he's withdrawn the question and see the next
19 question.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

21 BY MR. LAVELLE:

22 Q. Did you form your own opinion as to the likely
23 outcome of the patent litigation?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And what was your personal opinion, based upon

1 your analysis, of the likely outcome of the patent
2 litigation?

3 MS. MICHEL: Objection, calls for a legal
4 conclusion.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Sustained.

6 BY MR. LAVELLE:

7 Q. Well, then, let me ask my last question.

8 Would you compare for us, sir, the split of the
9 patent life in the ESI settlement to your view of the
10 likely outcome of the merits of the ESI litigation?

11 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor. He cannot
12 make that comparison without making an implicit --
13 giving an implicit opinion on the likely outcome of the
14 litigation.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I agree. When you're asking
16 what the likely outcome, all you're doing is saying who
17 would have won, and that's a legal conclusion, and this
18 is entangled in a legal opinion. So, I'm sustaining
19 the objection.

20 MR. LAVELLE: I understand your ruling, Your
21 Honor.

22 (Counsel conferring.)

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may confer with
24 counsel, Mr. Lavelle.

25 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor.

1 Your Honor, I want to ask -- I want to try one
2 more line just to make sure that I understand and I'm
3 complying with your instructions.

4 BY MR. LAVELLE:

5 Q. You heard the opinions expressed by Dr. Banker
6 and Dr. Langer on the mixing question, correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. In your opinion, what conclusion on
9 infringement flows from the finding that there was
10 mixing?

11 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor. That calls
12 for a legal conclusion in the sense that whether or not
13 a product with a mixed layer would infringe the claim
14 calls for a legal conclusion on exactly what the claim
15 meant, the claim interpretation, and that was the
16 subject of the Markman hearing.

17 In other words, Your Honor, he can't -- Mr.
18 Miller cannot answer that question without coming to a
19 legal conclusion on the claim interpretation issue
20 which was presented to Judge DuBois at the Markman
21 hearing and never decided.

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, I'm sustaining the
23 objection. First of all, the question asks for him to
24 make some conclusion based on a finding. There was no
25 finding, as we all know, and whether or not mixing

1 infringed the patent calls for a legal conclusion.

2 MR. LAVELLE: I understand your ruling.

3 May I have one additional second to consult,
4 please?

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may.

6 (Counsel conferring.)

7 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, may I be heard just
8 briefly on this to raise a point that Mr. Lavelle is
9 not in a position to raise because he wasn't here
10 earlier?

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Any objection?

12 MS. MICHEL: No, Your Honor.

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Go ahead.

14 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, it seems to me
15 pertinent on this issue that we have heard testimony in
16 complaint counsel's case on issues of law from an
17 expert, and that was Joel Hoffman, who testified on FDA
18 law and rendered various opinions on what the law was
19 and what legal consequences would flow from various
20 scenarios. It was pure law, and --

21 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Did you hear any legal
22 opinions that were allowed after someone objected to a
23 legal opinion?

24 MR. NIELDS: No, Your Honor, we did not object
25 to it, partly because we understood the Court's opinion

1 on our motion to dismiss to say, quite clearly, that
2 you were going to regard Mr. Hoffman's opinions and the
3 question of FDA law as an issue of fact in this case,
4 and we think there is an analogy.

5 Patent lawyers do testify and give legal
6 opinions in patent cases, as we've cited in our
7 response to their motion in limine, which I think the
8 Court has, and we believe that the testimony of this
9 witness will be intelligible and useful --

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm sorry, I couldn't hear
11 over the phone ringing, Mr. Nields. You need to repeat
12 that.

13 MR. NIELDS: I'm sorry, Your Honor.

14 We believe that this witness' testimony will be
15 way more intelligible and way more useful to the Court
16 if he is permitted to apply the patent principles that
17 he's testified about already and the information which
18 is in the record about the patent case and which he has
19 studied to some legal standard. And again, as Your
20 Honor said I thought at the beginning of this and other
21 times, the weight that you will decide to accord it
22 will be determined later.

23 We believe, however, that if Your Honor decides
24 this is relevant and appropriate testimony and a
25 relevant line of inquiry, which we believe it is as the

1 Court knows, you will be in a position to assess it and
2 weigh it only if the witness' testimony can be
3 completed and he can compare the information that he's
4 testified about to some legal standard.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And you're telling me that
6 there is case law authority for patent attorneys giving
7 opinions, legal opinions in cases?

8 MR. NIELDS: Yes, there is, and we've cited it
9 in our -- in our motion -- response to their motion in
10 limine, and --

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I didn't see any cases cited
12 under Mr. Miller's -- the portion where you responded
13 to Mr. Miller. I didn't see any citations.

14 MR. NIELDS: I'm sorry, Your Honor, I had it
15 only a moment ago.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, let's speed things up a
17 little. I'm not going to allow, as I said earlier,
18 legal opinions over an objection, but if you're telling
19 me that there's authority, that this is a unique
20 situation because of patent law, then I will allow the
21 question and answer if we have an objection. I'll
22 allow it subject to reviewing any authority you're
23 going to submit to me.

24 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I would like to
25 clarify how counsel's portraying the law. There was at

1 one time instances of patent attorneys giving their
2 personal, subjective views on claim interpretation,
3 what a claim meant. There is no authority allowing a
4 patent attorney to testify from the stand on how a
5 litigated case would have been decided or even to give
6 an opinion, his own opinion, on how a litigated case
7 should have been decided. It's quite a different
8 situation.

9 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, the authority that
10 we -- that I was referring to is on page 16 of the --
11 Schering's --

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, here's what we're going
13 to do. I'm going to allow the question and answer
14 subject to the parties giving me case cites. I don't
15 want something in a footnote or in a brief. I want
16 case cites, and I'll review the authority, and then I
17 may disregard this answer.

18 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor, there are case
19 cites in our brief, several, explaining that legal
20 testimony on issues to be decided by the court is not
21 helpful to the Court and not proper.

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, so you want to stand
23 on -- I'm giving you a chance to submit further
24 authority if you would like. If you don't want to,
25 that's fine.

1 MS. MICHEL: We will submit further authority,
2 Your Honor.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, thank you. And we're
4 not allowing a foray into a lot here. We're allowing
5 one question and the answer. We're allowing the
6 question that was pending.

7 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, given that Mr. Nields
8 made some discussion here on issues that I'm also not
9 familiar with, Ms. Bokat would like a chance to
10 respond.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: That's fair. Go ahead, Ms.
12 Bokat.

13 MS. BOKAT: Thank you, Your Honor.

14 I think Mr. Nields' analogy between Mr. Miller
15 and Joel Hoffman is extremely imperfect. Joel Hoffman
16 was not sitting in that witness chair to give Your
17 Honor a legal opinion. What he did was to merely
18 summarize the existing court opinions and the various
19 proclamations from the FDA in their guidances or their
20 various letters. He was not rendering his own legal
21 opinion, and that's what counsel is asking Mr. Miller
22 to do.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

24 MS. MICHEL: And Your Honor, if I might add --

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: You have my ruling. I'm going

1 to allow this, but I'm going to decide later whether
2 it's going to be disregarded or not.

3 MS. MICHEL: Thank you, Your Honor.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: So, do you want the court
5 reporter to read back the pending question?

6 MR. LAVELLE: If it's possible to do so, yes,
7 Your Honor.

8 (The record was read as follows:)

9 "QUESTION: You heard the opinions expressed by
10 Dr. Banker and Dr. Langer on the mixing question,
11 correct?

12 "ANSWER: Yes.

13 "QUESTION: In your opinion, what conclusion on
14 infringement flows from the finding that there was
15 mixing?"

16 THE WITNESS: My conclusion is that that
17 testimony amply supported a finding that there was
18 mixing in the ESI product.

19 BY MR. LAVELLE:

20 Q. Okay. And what was your opinion under that
21 hypothetical of whether or not there was going to be
22 infringement?

23 A. That conclusion leads to the next conclusion,
24 which is that Key had a very strong probability of
25 prevailing on the infringement issue.

1 Q. Thank you, sir.

2 Now --

3 MS. MICHEL: Objection. I move to strike that
4 answer, Your Honor. That was not Mr. Miller's opinion
5 on infringement; that was Mr. Miller predicting how the
6 court would have decided the case.

7 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, I thought that was
8 precisely what you told me you were going to allow.

9 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm overruling the objection.
10 The last two answers are allowed only subject to my
11 ruling to be made later, and I would like the case
12 authorities submitted to my office by the end of the
13 day today or you can hand it to me during court.

14 MR. LAVELLE: That's fine, Your Honor, we can
15 hand it up to you here in court.

16 BY MR. LAVELLE:

17 Q. Can I now direct you back to Exhibit 2060? Do
18 you have that once again?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And did you reach an opinion as to how the
21 split of the patent life in the ESI settlement compared
22 to your assessment of the likely outcome of the ESI
23 litigation?

24 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor, calls for
25 speculation in the sense that he's asking Mr. Miller to

1 again predict the likely outcome of the litigation
2 rather than give his own opinion on the -- on the
3 merits of the litigation.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm going to sustain it, and
5 what I'm going to do is I think I'm going to take a
6 break and review the case law that the parties have
7 told me they've cited, and I'm going to come back and
8 resolve this one way or the other so I can decide
9 whether to disregard the last few answers that we have.

10 Does anybody have any further case law they
11 want to submit to me in the next half hour or hour?

12 MR. LAVELLE: We have --

13 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, does the Court now
14 have the -- Schering's response to the motions in
15 limine?

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

17 MR. NIELDS: I believe that everything that we
18 wanted the Court to see and wanted to cite to the Court
19 is in that response.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And I have complaint counsel's
21 motion.

22 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor, you have our
23 motion.

24 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, the only other thing I
25 can think of which may be pertinent, but I don't want

1 to burden the Court with it if the Court doesn't view
2 it as pertinent, is I think I referenced in -- orally
3 the other day some class action cases where courts
4 compared the settlement to likely outcome, and I would
5 be happy to provide those citations to the Court --

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm expecting to see those in
7 your post-trial brief since that issue is still open.

8 MR. NIELDS: Okay, okay.

9 MS. MICHEL: And Your Honor, I would just
10 like -- excuse me, I apologize.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: That's okay. It's happened to
12 all of us. You're doing fine.

13 MS. MICHEL: To the extent that Mr. Miller
14 would be summarizing the state of patent law and
15 explaining how the evidence in the ESI case fits within
16 that framework of patent law, we don't object, and in
17 that sense his testimony would be like Mr. Hoffman's.

18 To the extent that he's offering an opinion on
19 the outcome of the case, that can be nothing but
20 speculative and a legal opinion.

21 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, we intend to offer
22 both how the evidence fits in terms of the applicable
23 patent law, and we think it's appropriate and helpful
24 to encapsulate and summarize his opinion, to let him
25 apply those principles to the facts of this case and

1 testify as to an objective assessment of the case. We
2 think that when you look at the law, you will find what
3 their own expert Mr. Adelman has written that the law
4 on the use of the patent law and procedure experts in
5 patent infringement litigation is that their use is
6 solely within the discretion of the trial judge, and
7 that you will find that the United States Court of
8 Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the Patent Court, has
9 said that as to these types of legal opinions that
10 we're offering, that you have -- you, the Court -- have
11 complete discretion to adopt the opinion as your own,
12 to find guidance from it, to ignore it entirely or to
13 not hear it.

14 We think you have ample discretion and
15 authority to hear this testimony. We think it will be
16 potentially helpful to you and to perhaps people down
17 the road who have to try to put the pieces together on
18 the merits of the patent case, and we think it would be
19 appropriate and helpful to you so that you should admit
20 it and then determine what weight to give it in your
21 decision-making process.

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Curran?

23 MR. CURRAN: Yes. Your Honor, your ruling with
24 respect to this witness might set a precedent that
25 affects Upsher's rights down the road, and so I would

1 just like to point out on the record that we believe
2 that Mr. Hoffman, Joel Hoffman, the Hatch-Waxman expert
3 for complaint counsel, did provide legal opinions. He
4 interpreted cases that were out there --

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Did you object to those?

6 MR. CURRAN: No, we didn't, and we expressly
7 stated why we didn't in our response to their motion in
8 limine, and we said we assumed that that would be good
9 for us as well. So, we didn't oppose Professor
10 Hoffman's testimony on the assumption that the same
11 standard would be applied to the respondents' case in
12 chief.

13 Thank you, Your Honor.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: We don't have any question
15 pending, do we, to the witness? I think I --

16 MR. LAVELLE: We do not, Your Honor.

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. Let's take a short
18 break, come back on the record at 11:55.

19 (A brief recess was taken.)

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Who's going to speak for
21 respondents, Mr. Nields or Mr. Lavelle?

22 MR. NIELDS: I will for the moment, Your Honor.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. I've done a -- as much
24 of a review as I could have done during the recess of
25 the case law that's been cited by all the parties, and

1 I understand from your brief, at least as of the early
2 nineties, the court commonly referred to as the Patent
3 Court, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal
4 Circuit, was accepting expert opinions on patent
5 issues. Have they changed that view? Has the law
6 changed in that court?

7 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, I am not the best
8 person to answer that question. Mr. Lavelle is a
9 patent lawyer. I can tell you what I believe to be the
10 case.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: That's not a disparaging
12 remark about him, is it? Even under pressure.

13 MR. LAVELLE: I have been so disparaged before,
14 Your Honor.

15 The decisions that you have in front of you
16 continue to correctly state the law to the extent that
17 you have discretion to give -- to allow the testimony
18 or not and what weight to give it.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Ms. Michel?

20 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor --

21 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I have looked quickly over the
22 cases that you cited, but -- that's why I asked the
23 question. Do you have any authority to show that the
24 Court of Appeals of the Federal Circuit has changed the
25 law, that they now reject -- I see you cited some

1 District Court cases. I see one in Utah and one in
2 Pennsylvania.

3 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, the Federal Circuit
4 has stated that the issue of claim interpretation is a
5 question of law and that it was for the judge to
6 determine and that expert opinion is not helpful to
7 that determination.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: But they also say that it's
9 the judge's discretion to allow it on patent issues,
10 don't they?

11 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I would point out that
12 there is a big difference between the cases that Mr.
13 Lavelle is relying on and the situation here. The
14 cases have allowed the District Court discretion to
15 allow that testimony -- to allow a patent lawyer, such
16 as -- testimony on his opinion on issues of claim
17 interpretation and to give some background on patent
18 law. Now, the -- it is not within the District Court's
19 decision to abdicate its responsibility in deciding
20 that legal issue. That's a very different situation,
21 though, than what's happening here.

22 What's happening here is Mr. Miller is giving a
23 conclusion on the likely outcome of patent litigation.
24 No patent lawyer has ever testified in a patent trial
25 on the likely outcome of patent litigation. There's no

1 authority to support that.

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, I went back and reread
3 my ruling to see if we're derailed how we got derailed,
4 and I said, "If an attorney wants to tell me they
5 looked at a file and they think somebody would have
6 won, I'm going to allow that, and I'll give it the
7 weight it deserves." So, I think Mr. Curran had a
8 better memory than I did of what I had said this
9 morning. To the extent I'm tweaking that ruling,
10 that's what I'm going to do now.

11 I'm going to allow the witness to tell me he's
12 reviewed the evidence, he's reviewed the file, and he
13 thought it was a good case, as I said this morning. I
14 will not allow a witness to tell me what a judge would
15 have done or what a court would have done. That's not
16 going to be allowed.

17 And to the extent other legal opinions have
18 come in during this trial, I don't recall any that came
19 in over objection, but in this case, I'm going to go
20 with the case citations I have. And I'll remind the
21 parties, I have a very long memory. If there is
22 anything mis-cited here, that wouldn't be a good thing,
23 and if someone wants to point out if they have made a
24 mistake, I'm going to need to know that in the next day
25 or two, but I'm going to allow it. I understand you've

1 objected. And I also want to see this issue briefed in
2 the post-trial briefs.

3 MS. MICHEL: Yes, Your Honor.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I want to give the parties a
5 chance to give me the latest law they can find and
6 their positions, but I'm allowing it for now. I am
7 going to allow him to tell me what -- you know, he
8 looked at the file and what he thought was going to
9 happen, but I'm not allowing him to tell me, you know,
10 what a judge would have done, what a court would have
11 done, and I'll give it the weight it deserves.

12 With that, let's proceed, and you may need to
13 re-ask some questions with the -- with the guidelines
14 I've just set out, okay? Thank you, with that, let's
15 proceed.

16 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you for your ruling, Your
17 Honor.

18 BY MR. LAVELLE:

19 Q. Let's go back to the infringement question and
20 just sort of focus ourselves a little bit, okay?

21 You told us that in your view the term "coating
22 material" should be construed to cover one layer or
23 more than one layer, correct?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And what is your opinion as to whether or not

1 the patent's infringed by ESI with that structure?

2 A. My opinion is that the patent would be
3 infringed by ESI's product.

4 Q. And would you explain that, please?

5 A. If the patent term in question is construed to
6 cover a coating material comprising or consisting of
7 one or more layers, ESI's product, based on the facts
8 that I have -- that have been presented by both sides
9 in this case, convince me or persuade me that ESI's
10 product is very likely to be that of a single layer
11 mixture of -- of products -- of components.

12 However, if the -- if the result were contrary,
13 and that is to say that the two layers were, in fact,
14 distinct, they would still be infringed.

15 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I move to strike the
16 portion of the witness' testimony which gave an opinion
17 as to whether or not the -- there was any mixture in
18 ESI's coating. That is outside the scope of his
19 expertise.

20 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, we obviously think
21 that's just an integral part of forming the opinion
22 that you just permitted him to give.

23 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, we would accept Mr.
24 Miller's testimony were it to say that he simply
25 accepts as a hypothetical the issue of whether or

1 not -- that he simply accepts as a hypothetical the
2 mixing based on the testimony of the technical experts.
3 We object to any testimony by Mr. Miller in which he
4 says, "I conclude that there's mixing." It's -- it's
5 an important difference.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I sustain the objection as far
7 as this witness telling me his conclusion about mixing,
8 and that part of the answer will be disregarded. Of
9 course, the witness has the right to rely on other
10 opinions, and you have the right to impeach that issue
11 on your cross, Ms. Michel.

12 MS. MICHEL: Thank you.

13 BY MR. LAVELLE:

14 Q. Okay, assume for my next question that there
15 is, in fact, mixing in the ESI product; that is, the
16 ethylcellulose and the HPC are mixed, okay?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Under that assumption, does the ESI product
19 infringe claim 1 of the '743 patent?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And would you explain that?

22 A. Because if the '743 patent is construed to
23 cover mixing or whether it's construed to cover a dual
24 layer system, one or more layers, then either way,
25 ESI's product comes within the literal scope of the

1 claim.

2 Q. Is there a concept in patent law called
3 "literal infringement"?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And what is that concept, sir?

6 A. Literal infringement is where an accused
7 product contains elements each of which is literally
8 found within the recitation of the claim elements on a
9 one-to-one basis.

10 Put another way, each element recited in the
11 claim finds an exact literal counterpart in a
12 corresponding component in the accused product.

13 Q. Thank you.

14 If the term "coating material" is construed to
15 cover one or more layers in the coating, is claim 1
16 literally infringed by ESI's product?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. If the facts are that ESI's product is mixed,
19 is claim 1 infringed by ESI's product?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Okay. Is there a doctrine in patent law called
22 the doctrine of equivalents?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And would you explain to the Court what that
25 doctrine is?

1 A. The doctrine of equivalents is the application
2 of the principle that when a product fails to meet each
3 and every limitation recited in a patent claim, because
4 there is one element or more elements, but let's say
5 one element or component in the accused product that
6 does not literally correspond to an element in the
7 claim, then the inquiry is does that difference in
8 elements or does the element that is in the accused
9 product which is not literally recited in the claim
10 correspond substantially to the claim element in the
11 sense that it would do the same thing in the same way
12 to give the same result.

13 In other words, that looking at the claim
14 element and the corresponding element in the product,
15 are they insubstantially different? If they are not --
16 if they are insubstantially different, no substantial
17 difference, then we say that there is equivalence
18 between the accused product and the claim recitations.

19 Q. Okay. And if the facts support the conclusion
20 that the HPC in ESI's product was doing the same thing
21 as the HPC in the patent claim, modifying the film,
22 would that be relevant to infringement under the
23 doctrine of equivalents?

24 A. Yes.

25 MS. MICHEL: Objection. This testimony goes

1 outside the scope of the witness' expert report. He
2 provided no opinion on infringement under the doctrine
3 of equivalents in his expert report.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Is that right?

5 MR. LAVELLE: Yes, that's right, Your Honor.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: What she's saying is right,
7 you've gone beyond the scope of what you disclosed in
8 discovery to complaint counsel?

9 MR. LAVELLE: He did not offer an opinion on
10 the doctrine of equivalents in his report, that's true.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: That objection sustained.

12 BY MR. LAVELLE:

13 Q. Would you explain why you didn't offer any
14 opinion on the doctrine of equivalents in your report?

15 A. Well, in assessing the evidence on both sides,
16 I did not consider the equivalency issue to be a
17 significant one or a material one to the outcome of the
18 case.

19 Q. Would you explain that, please?

20 A. Because the interpretation that would be given
21 to claim 1 of the '743 patent was one which would
22 literally encompass the ESI product, so that it would
23 not be necessary to extend the inquiry beyond the
24 determination of literal infringement. If the claim is
25 literally infringed, one need go no further.

1 MS. MICHEL: Objection, Your Honor. I'm going
2 to move to strike in that I believe that the witness is
3 now giving testimony as to -- when he uses terms like
4 "would have," he's now trying to predict the outcome of
5 the patent litigation that was settled rather than
6 giving his own -- his own personal views on the patent
7 merits.

8 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, he was asked to
9 explain his conclusion, and he was doing so.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm not sure it goes so much
11 to the "would have," Ms. Michel. I overrule the
12 objection.

13 BY MR. LAVELLE:

14 Q. So, in your analysis, were the doctrine of
15 equivalents issues material to the outcome of the
16 infringement issue you looked at?

17 A. No.

18 Q. And you heard testimony here in the courtroom
19 yesterday at length about how the HPC works in the ESI
20 product. Do you recall that testimony?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. If there's literal infringement, is any of that
23 testimony material to the outcome of the infringement
24 question?

25 A. No.

1 Q. Did you hear testimony at length about how the
2 HPC works and whether or not it forms pores or channels
3 or hydrated layers or anything else, did you hear all
4 that testimony?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. If there's literal infringement, is any of that
7 testimony relevant to the infringement question?

8 A. No, it's not.

9 Q. And would you have to resolve any of those fact
10 disputes in order to find literal infringement?

11 A. No.

12 Q. And did you hear extensive testimony about the
13 shape of the potassium crystals and whether or not they
14 compress and whether they're round or pin-shaped or
15 something else? Did you hear that testimony yesterday?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Any of that testimony relevant to the question
18 of literal infringement?

19 A. No.

20 Q. What was your ultimate conclusion on the
21 question of infringement in the ESI case? I'm sorry.

22 What was your ultimate conclusion on the
23 question of whether or not ESI infringed the '743
24 patent?

25 A. My conclusion is that ESI literally infringed

1 the '743 patent.

2 Q. Okay, very good.

3 Could I direct you now back to Exhibit 2060,
4 please.

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And we've talked about this exhibit a little
7 bit. Could you just re-orient us again on what this
8 exhibit shows?

9 A. This is a time line showing points in time
10 between the January 1998 settlement in principle
11 between Key and ESI at one end, going forward to
12 January 2004 when, pursuant to the settlement agreement
13 that was arrived at, ESI would be permitted to enter
14 the U.S. market with its generic version of the --
15 generic version of Micro-K KCl tablets.

16 Q. And -- I'm sorry.

17 A. And -- and the blue portion of the time line,
18 from the January 2004 time point to the end, represents
19 the period remaining in the life of the patent until
20 September 2006 when the patent will expire.

21 Q. And under the settlement agreement, how much
22 sooner does ESI get a license than if the case had gone
23 through and there had been a finding of infringement?

24 A. By my calculation, the period in question that
25 you're referring to, which is the blue period, is

1 approximately 32 months.

2 Q. Okay. How does the split of the patent life
3 contained in the ESI settlement compare to the
4 assessment of the merits of the ESI case?

5 A. I think it is at least a fair representation of
6 the likely outcome of the case; that is to say, by --
7 in my assessment of Key's chances of prevailing were
8 very high, this would be a generous -- a relatively --
9 at least a generous arrangement whereby 32 months would
10 be added to the period prior to the expiration of the
11 patent during which time there could be sales of
12 Micro-K tablets in the United States.

13 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I object to the
14 witness' answer as nonresponsive to the extent that it
15 gave testimony on the likely outcome of the case rather
16 than his own personal views of the strength of the
17 merits, and also I believe that his testimony on the
18 likely outcome of the case is improper under your
19 ruling, that he would not be allowed to testify as to
20 what any court might have decided.

21 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, I think we're trying
22 to parse his words a tad too fine. He's clearly
23 testifying about his comparison of the split against
24 his assessment of the merits.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, I am going to overrule

1 the objection, but I am going to instruct the witness
2 to listen to the question and answer the question
3 that's asked only. You seem to be rambling a little
4 bit and going on to more things than asked.

5 THE WITNESS: Yes, Your Honor.

6 BY MR. LAVELLE:

7 Q. Let me just ask it once again clearly.

8 Would you compare the split of the patent life
9 in the ESI settlement to your assessment of the merits
10 of the ESI case?

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Didn't you just ask that?

12 MR. LAVELLE: I'll withdraw the question, Your
13 Honor.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I mean, if it's a different
15 question, fine, but we don't need the same question
16 asked again.

17 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, it was only slightly
18 different, and I was trying to sort of cooperate and
19 get an answer that would fall within your instruction.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, good.

21 Susanne, read the question back. I'll allow
22 it.

23 (The record was read as follows:)

24 "QUESTION: Would you compare the split of the
25 patent life in the ESI settlement to your assessment of

1 the merits of the ESI case?"

2 THE WITNESS: My comparison of the split with
3 my assessment of the ESI case is that they are fairly
4 represent -- fairly in line with each other.

5 MR. LAVELLE: Thank you, Your Honor, I have
6 nothing further.

7 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. Cross?

8 MR. LAVELLE: Oh, Your Honor, I'm sorry,
9 nothing further with respect to the ESI case. We may
10 recall Dr. Miller with respect to the Upsher case.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Ms. Michel, I don't think you
12 need to go over what you've already asked on voir dire
13 of the witness. That's part of the record.

14 MS. MICHEL: Thank you, Your Honor.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And I wanted to remind the
16 parties also, regarding these expert opinions, if you
17 look at the history of the Federal Rules, these rules
18 are designed to protect the jury from hearing things
19 they are not supposed to hear. We don't have a jury.
20 Because something is allowed here, it's not the end of
21 the world for either side. I'm going to give things
22 the due weight that's deserved. We've got a record
23 here. I'm going to see the questions that are asked by
24 both sides when you qualify a witness and when you
25 impeach a witness. Just my thoughts.

1 You may proceed.

2 CROSS EXAMINATION

3 BY MS. MICHEL:

4 Q. Mr. Miller, with regard to the exhibit
5 currently on the screen, which I believe is marked SPX
6 2060, I believe it was your testimony that the split of
7 the patent life there -- I'm sorry if I mischaracterize
8 this -- was a fair comparison to your assessment of the
9 merits of the ESI case. Is that right?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. So, would you agree with me that the yellow
12 line here, the line that shows the amount of time
13 before ESI can enter, is approximately 75 percent of
14 the total length of the line? Is that right? Or
15 please give it your own number.

16 A. Starting from January 1998 to January 2004, it
17 appears to be 72 months in comparison with 32 months
18 between January 2004 and September 2006, whatever that
19 ratio is. 72 -- the total number of months would be --
20 72 is -- is 104 months, so I would say that the yellow
21 portion of the time line would correspond to about 74
22 months, 75 months -- 74 percent or so of the total time
23 line.

24 Q. All right. Now, you would agree, Mr. Miller,
25 that you don't think that anyone can quantify the odd

1 that one party will win a patent litigation because of
2 the unpredictable nature of that litigation -- of
3 patent litigation. Isn't that right?

4 A. Attorneys are often asked by their clients to
5 do just that, to quantify the probability of being able
6 to prevail or not prevail in the litigation. In this
7 particular situation, we have a record that -- of what
8 essentially was going to be presented to the District
9 Court had the case gone to trial, and while I would say
10 that one cannot quantify with 100 percent precision,
11 I'd say that one can -- one can obtain a fairly
12 accurate sense of how the case would have come out.

13 Q. Mr. Miller, I would direct your attention to
14 page 62 of your deposition, which you can look at on
15 the screen or it's the second tab in the binder there,
16 and specifically your question -- there was a question:

17 "QUESTION: They might be 80 percent, they
18 might be 20 percent," and in this context we're talking
19 about the chances of winning litigation, patent
20 litigation.

21 And you responded: "I would not be prepared to
22 give you -- I don't think anyone could quantify the
23 odds on something like this. Litigation being of the
24 nature that it is, you know, you can assess the merits
25 of a case in a general sense, but to be specific on a

1 number, I would -- I could do it, but, you know, I
2 would feel more comfortable by saying that it was
3 substantially or better than 50 percent."

4 That was your testimony regarding the Upsher
5 litigation.

6 A. At that time of my deposition, yes.

7 Q. So, Mr. Miller, your testimony would be then
8 that Schering had -- I believe you quantified the split
9 of the patent life as about 70/30. Is that right?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. So, it would be your assessment of the merits
12 of the patent litigation, then, that there was at least
13 a 70 percent chance that Schering was going to win that
14 litigation.

15 A. If I'm asked to quantify, which I -- you know,
16 I might not be able to do with that degree of
17 precision, I would say that ESI's chances of prevailing
18 were much better than -- well, substantially better
19 than 50 percent and, in fact, I would say they were
20 probably at least as good as 70 percent and perhaps
21 more.

22 MR. LAVELLE: Could I hear that answer read
23 back, please?

24 THE WITNESS: Did I say ESI? Sorry.

25 (The record was read as follows:)

1 "ANSWER: If I'm asked to quantify, which I --
2 you know, I might not be able to do with that degree of
3 precision, I would say that ESI's chances of prevailing
4 were much better than -- well, substantially better
5 than 50 percent and, in fact, I would say they were
6 probably at least as good as 70 percent and perhaps
7 more."

8 THE WITNESS: It should be Key instead of ESI
9 there. Sorry.

10 BY MS. MICHEL:

11 Q. Mr. Miller, let me ask you for a moment to
12 assume that ESI had a stronger case than you believe
13 and that therefore correspondingly Schering had a
14 weaker case than you believe. Under this theory, then,
15 of the patent merits reflecting the split, wouldn't it
16 be true that ESI should have obtained an earlier entry
17 date?

18 A. That would seem to be the case, yes.

19 Q. So, if ESI did not get an earlier entry date in
20 that situation, then one way for Schering to make up
21 for that lost time to ESI is to pay ESI money. Isn't
22 that correct?

23 MR. LAVELLE: Objection, Your Honor, outside
24 the scope of his testimony on direct.

25 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, the witness has

1 testified that the patent merits in his view reflect a
2 split of the patent life --

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I agree. Overruled.

4 BY MS. MICHEL:

5 Q. Would you like the question read back?

6 A. Yeah, I didn't understand the question.

7 (The record was read as follows:)

8 "QUESTION: So, if ESI did not get an earlier
9 entry date in that situation, then one way for Schering
10 to make up for that lost time to ESI is to pay ESI
11 money. Isn't that correct?"

12 THE WITNESS: I have no basis for giving -- I
13 have no way of giving an answer to that question. I
14 don't know what you mean by -- by "giving money." This
15 was a settlement that was embodied in the form of a
16 document that gave ESI a nonexclusive royalty-free
17 license to market its product in the United States
18 beginning in September 2004. Beyond that, if you're
19 asking me about the economics or the financials of it,
20 I can't -- I can't speak to it.

21 BY MS. MICHEL:

22 Q. Mr. Miller, you're aware that part of the
23 settlement agreement, which you read, requires Schering
24 to pay ESI a sum of money. Isn't that right?

25 A. Frankly, ma'am, I haven't read the agreement

1 other than with respect to what the settlement provides
2 with regard to the split of the license term. I did
3 read the agreement, but right now, sitting here, I have
4 not -- no recollection of any of the other details of
5 that license agreement, because that was not part of my
6 assignment, to become involved in other tangential or
7 other matters respecting the two companies.

8 Q. So, is it fair to say then, Mr. Miller, that
9 nothing in the testimony you offered today takes into
10 account the amount of money required -- excuse me.

11 Is it fair to say, Mr. Miller, that your
12 testimony today does not take into account in any way
13 the money which the agreement requires Schering to pay
14 to ESI?

15 A. That's right, I did not take that into account.

16 Q. Thank you.

17 Mr. Miller, we can't here create the hearing
18 and the trial that would have occurred in the ESI
19 patent case, can we?

20 MR. LAVELLE: Objection, Your Honor. I think
21 this was gone into in the voir dire. Asked and
22 answered.

23 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I -- this will
24 actually take a somewhat different tack.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm going to allow it. I

1 don't remember everything that was asked. It's been an
2 eventful morning. If she needs to go back and ask a
3 question again, I'm going to allow it. Overruled.

4 MS. MICHEL: Could you reread the -- read back
5 the question, please?

6 (The record was read as follows:)

7 "QUESTION: Mr. Miller, we can't here create
8 the hearing and the trial that would have occurred in
9 the ESI patent case, can we?"

10 THE WITNESS: It never happened, so there's
11 nothing to re-create.

12 BY MS. MICHEL:

13 Q. ESI no longer has any motivation, as it did in
14 the patent case, to demonstrate that its product
15 doesn't infringe, does it?

16 A. Assuming the license agreement remains in
17 effect for the duration of the patent term and that
18 there is no dispute between the parties, which I have
19 no way of predicting, that would be speculation as to
20 what would go on in the future between them, I don't
21 know why there would be an issue regarding whether or
22 not ESI infringed with respect to a specific product
23 that was at issue if the settlement agreement gave ESI
24 a nonexclusive royalty-free license. So, I have no
25 way -- I clearly have no way of answering that question

1 with any kind of precision. I'm sorry.

2 Q. My question was actually more simple than that.
3 My question was ESI no longer has any motivation to
4 demonstrate that its product doesn't infringe because
5 the patent litigation has been settled.

6 A. I'm not aware that it was settled with a
7 consent judgment of infringement. I understand that it
8 was settled with this settlement agreement. Any issues
9 that might arise in the future regarding ESI -- a
10 position that ESI might choose to take, I have no way
11 of knowing.

12 Q. Mr. Miller, can you conceive of any reason why
13 at this point ESI might want to demonstrate that its
14 product does not infringe?

15 A. Not off -- no, I cannot. Sitting here right
16 now, I can't.

17 Q. Now, ESI was prepared to call fact and expert
18 witnesses and enter exhibits to support its case at a
19 patent trial, wasn't it?

20 A. Yes, they were -- I'm sorry, read the question
21 again, please.

22 (The record was read as follows:)

23 "QUESTION: Now, ESI was prepared to call fact
24 and expert witnesses and enter exhibits to support its
25 case at a patent trial, wasn't it?"

1 THE WITNESS: I would expect that would have
2 been the case, yes.

3 BY MS. MICHEL:

4 Q. And we can't produce all the same witnesses
5 with all the same motivations in this proceeding, can
6 we?

7 A. Totally and completely, I don't think so. I
8 don't think we can. In this proceeding, no.

9 Q. And certainly we can't have the same judge
10 deciding the patent issues, can we?

11 A. I don't think that would be a realistic
12 expectation.

13 Q. Now, Mr. Miller, you claim to give an objective
14 assessment of the patent merits. Is that right?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. The opinion that you gave on the patent merits
17 is your opinion, correct?

18 A. The report?

19 Q. The opinion that you offered here today, that's
20 your opinion.

21 A. That's my opinion, yes.

22 Q. And we can't test that opinion by comparing it
23 to the outcome of the litigation, can we?

24 A. There's nothing to compare it with the
25 outcome -- there was no outcome of the litigation with

1 respect to the trial of the case. There was no trial.

2 Q. So, we have no way to test the objectivity of
3 your opinion, do we?

4 A. Well, there's no way to -- well, there's
5 nothing that I can tell you that would indicate that I
6 was anything other than objective. My assignment as an
7 expert witness in these proceedings was to make an
8 objective assessment of the merits of the case. I was
9 not retained to serve as an expert witness on behalf of
10 Schering's positions, whatever they were, in these
11 proceedings.

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Sir, I need you to answer the
13 question that was asked, please.

14 Susanne, would you read back the question?

15 (The record was read as follows:)

16 "QUESTION: So, we have no way to test the
17 objectivity of your opinion, do we?"

18 THE WITNESS: I suppose not.

19 BY MS. MICHEL:

20 Q. Thank you.

21 Now, during the Markman hearing in the patent
22 litigation, the court took testimony from Dr. Banker
23 for Schering and Dr. Hopfenfeld (sic) for ESI. Is that
24 correct?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. A central issue in the Markman hearing was the
2 meaning of the term "a coating material" in the claim,
3 correct?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And specifically whether the definition of "a
6 coating material" requires that ethylcellulose and
7 hydroxypropylcellulose are -- or PEG, polyethylene
8 glycol, must be mixed, correct?

9 A. May I have the question again, please?

10 (The record was read as follows:)

11 "QUESTION: And specifically whether the
12 definition of "a coating material" requires that
13 ethylcellulose and hydroxypropylcellulose or PEG,
14 polyethylene glycol, must be mixed, correct?"

15 THE WITNESS: That was an issue, yes.

16 BY MS. MICHEL:

17 Q. The parties didn't submit any additional
18 information to Judge DuBois on the claim interpretation
19 issue following the Markman hearing, did they?

20 A. I don't believe so.

21 Q. To the best of your knowledge, if we wanted to
22 review all the information and the arguments that the
23 judge had on claim interpretation, we should review the
24 briefs submitted by the parties on the issue, the
25 Markman transcript and the exhibits associated with

1 those two things, correct?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. So, if we were trying to put ourselves in the
4 judge's shoes and guess how he was going to decide the
5 claim interpretation issue, we would get the most
6 accurate picture possible from the record -- from that
7 record, correct?

8 A. That was the record we had -- I had to work
9 with, yes.

10 Q. And in that -- if we were trying to put
11 ourselves in Judge DuBois' shoes, we should only
12 consider arguments that he heard, right?

13 A. Arguments and evidence placed before the judge,
14 yes.

15 Q. And so the arguments on claim interpretation
16 that were made in this courtroom yesterday and the day
17 before, those arguments -- that -- those -- this
18 proceeding was not before Judge DuBois, was it?

19 A. Yesterday's proceeding was not, no.

20 Q. So, the testimony given here by Dr. Banker and
21 Dr. Langer and you on the likely interpretation of the
22 claim, that could just -- that could have no bearing on
23 Judge DuBois' decision.

24 A. What transpired in these proceedings would have
25 no bearing on his decision if he had made one. He

1 didn't make one. He wasn't -- and that was years ago.

2 Q. And the proceedings of this Court could have no
3 bearing on the likely outcome of that litigation,
4 correct?

5 A. Yes, logically you're right.

6 Q. Now, in their testimony during the Markman
7 hearing, Dr. Hopfenfeld (sic) and Dr. Banker discussed
8 a number of other patents and technical articles, and
9 the parties submitted those into evidence. Isn't that
10 right?

11 A. Yes. It's Hopfenberg. It's Hopfenberg, and
12 yes, they did.

13 Q. Thank you. And you didn't explain here in your
14 testimony regarding claim interpretation the
15 significance of each of those points that was raised by
16 Dr. Hopfenberg and Dr. Banker, did you?

17 A. May I have the question, please?

18 (The record was read as follows:)

19 "QUESTION: And you didn't explain here in your
20 testimony regarding claim interpretation the
21 significance of each of those points that was raised by
22 Dr. Hopfenberg and Dr. Banker, did you?"

23 THE WITNESS: Right.

24 BY MS. MICHEL:

25 Q. Okay. You've not presented Dr. Hopfenberg's

1 analysis or given any assessment, have you, today?

2 A. Today? No.

3 Q. So, you didn't give us an accurate picture
4 today of what Judge DuBois heard, did you?

5 A. No, that's not correct. I did not specifically
6 testify on the items that you mentioned; however, the
7 answers that I gave were derived from my consideration
8 of those materials when I was undertaking this
9 assignment, when I reviewed the record. I did review
10 those materials.

11 Q. Now, Dr. Hopfenberg testified at the Markman
12 hearing on how one of skill in the art would understand
13 the term "coating material." Isn't that right?

14 A. Yes, I believe he did.

15 Q. And Dr. Hopfenberg testified that a coating
16 which was applied in separate layers, a layer of
17 ethyl -- a layer of EC and a layer of HPC on top of it,
18 if applied by the spray coating process could not work
19 to give sustained release. Is that right?

20 A. I believe he testified something to that
21 effect, yes.

22 Q. And the judge indicated during the Markman
23 hearing, didn't he, that he saw the issue of whether a
24 product with separate layers of EC and HPC would work,
25 the judge saw that issue as relevant to the claim

1 interpretation issue, didn't he?

2 A. He mentioned it in connection with the --
3 during the Markman hearing. Whether -- whether I take
4 that -- those comments of the judge to be connected
5 with his determination of what the claim means is I
6 don't think so. The issue of whether the claim would
7 work or not has to do with whether the claim is valid
8 or not, and that was not the purpose of the Markman
9 hearing. The Markman hearing was to interpret the
10 claim.

11 Q. Rachel, if you could help me find the Markman
12 transcript, please.

13 Mr. Miller, you can turn to your binder to the
14 tab marked CX 1659, please, and specifically I would
15 direct your attention to page 126.

16 A. I'm sorry, what's the exhibit number?

17 Q. I believe it's marked CX 1659. It may be
18 towards the back. And it will be in the black binder,
19 the one --

20 A. This one here?

21 Q. Yes, thank you.

22 Oh, I apologize, it's marked SPX -- the exhibit
23 number that I've directed Mr. Miller's attention to is
24 SPX 687, and specifically I'd like to direct your
25 attention to page 126, line 25, and continuing on to

1 page 127, and let me read -- this is the Court talking
2 beginning at line 25 of page 126:

3 "THE COURT: I can tell you that I don't think
4 the issues are free from doubt. I don't know whether
5 I've raised an issue that you haven't considered. The
6 issue that I articulated with you, Mr. Herman, and that
7 is whether assuming the patent is broad enough to be
8 read -- and I'm referring to the claim portion of the
9 patent -- is broad enough to be read as including
10 separately layered coatings of these three substances
11 and the molecular weights described in the patent.

12 "The question whether that will work and
13 whether someone of ordinary skill in the art reading
14 that would know or would not know that it would not
15 work, that's an issue that occurred to me as I sat
16 here. I don't know whether you have focused on it.
17 We'll address that later.

18 "In any way -- in any event, it seems to me
19 that this is far from a clear issue, and I launch you
20 with that thought. This is not a slam-dunk case. I
21 haven't made up my mind."

22 The judge at this portion of the transcript is
23 giving some indication that he considers this issue of
24 whether the coatings would work with two separate
25 layers as an important -- as an issue relevant to claim

1 interpretation, isn't he?

2 A. I'm not sure. I know he -- I read what he
3 said, and he is posing a concern that if the claim were
4 interpreted to cover two layers, whether it would read
5 on something that would work. There is no evidence in
6 this case that -- at all that such a product would not
7 work, and he would -- was concerned with whether a
8 claim interpretation that read on an inoperable
9 embodiment that was not even shown to have been enabled
10 by the patent was something that he would ultimately
11 have considered in this case.

12 The issue was whether or not the claim is broad
13 enough -- whether or not the claim reads on a
14 material -- a coating material that contains a mixture
15 of the two ingredients or whether the two -- as well as
16 the two ingredients being in separate layers. That was
17 his -- that was his issue for determination at the
18 Markman hearing. He's getting off into another concern
19 of his as to whether the claim, if it covered two
20 layers which were absolutely separately and distinct
21 from each other, would work. He's raising it as a
22 concern for him and what may have been an issue of bona
23 fide contention, but there was no evidence on this
24 particular point.

25 Q. So, you're saying then, Mr. Miller, that the

1 judge has indicated some concern in this passage that
2 perhaps the patent is invalid if it's read as broadly
3 as Schering was requesting?

4 A. That was -- that may have been a concern that
5 he was expressing, yes. That's what he said.

6 Q. Okay, let's talk about the trial for a minute.
7 Now, the issue of claim interpretation that was
8 presented at the Markman hearing is a question of law,
9 correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And the issue of whether or not the claim as
12 construed can be -- covers ESI's product, that's a
13 question of fact, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And the main point of contention on this
16 factual issue was whether or not the EC and HPC were
17 actually mixed in ESI's product, right?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And that issue was going to be presented at
20 trial, correct?

21 A. I expect it would have been presented at trial,
22 yes.

23 Q. Okay. And unlike the claim interpretation
24 where we have a completed Markman transcript, we don't
25 have a trial transcript, do we?

1 A. No.

2 Q. And so again, we don't know what witnesses
3 would have been presented on those issues and what they
4 would have said, do we?

5 A. No.

6 Q. Over the last two days, we heard Dr. Langer and
7 Dr. Banker testify that ESI's product did have at least
8 partial mixing, didn't we?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. But that testimony was never presented to Judge
11 DuBois.

12 A. At the Markman hearing, no.

13 Q. That testimony was never presented to Judge
14 DuBois at any time, was it?

15 A. I believe that's correct.

16 Q. Now, ESI's expert, Dr. Hopfenberg --
17 Hopfenberg -- he would have testified at trial that the
18 ethylcellulose and HPC were not mixed in ESI's product,
19 wouldn't he?

20 A. Say that again, please.

21 Q. I'll rephrase that.

22 ESI's expert Dr. Hopfenberg would have
23 testified at trial that the EC and the HPC were not
24 mixed in ESI's product, wouldn't he?

25 A. Presumably, yes.

1 Q. But Dr. Hopfenberg had no reason to present
2 that testimony here, did he?

3 A. At the Markman hearing?

4 Q. In this proceeding, excuse me. Dr. Hopfenberg
5 has no reason to present -- to present the testimony
6 that he might have presented at trial in this
7 proceeding, does he?

8 A. When you say "this proceeding," this one here?

9 Q. This proceeding, yes, exactly.

10 A. I don't understand the question.

11 Q. My question is, you agree with me that Dr.
12 Hopfenberg would have presented testimony at the trial
13 if it had gone forward on the issue of whether or not
14 the EC and the HPC were mixed. Isn't that correct?

15 A. It is likely he would have done that, yes.

16 Q. And Mr. --

17 A. Now, may I speak?

18 Q. Yes.

19 A. Now, the -- whether the case would have gone to
20 trial I think would have been dependent upon the
21 outcome of the Markman hearing, which as you know was
22 not decided. Also, I note that --

23 Q. Excuse me, there's no question pending, Mr.
24 Miller.

25 A. Okay.

1 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, if he was explaining
2 his answer, I think he should be permitted to.

3 MS. MICHEL: I think he answered my question
4 sufficiently.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Was that an objection?

6 MR. LAVELLE: It was just a request that he was
7 in the middle of being permitted to -- if he was in the
8 middle of explaining his answer, he be permitted to
9 finish it.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, he asked if he could
11 speak, and he did, and then he went on to another topic
12 when he said, "Also, I note that," and she has the
13 right to cut him off.

14 BY MS. MICHEL:

15 Q. Mr. Miller, in concluding that ESI's product
16 literally infringed, you relied on Dr. Langer's
17 testimony that the ethylcellulose and the HPC were
18 mixed to some extent, as you stated in your report.
19 Isn't that right?

20 A. I didn't rely on it. I considered it together
21 with the other evidence in the case. I'm persuaded
22 that what Dr. Langer adduced was -- was the correct
23 thing.

24 MS. MICHEL: Your Honor, I move to strike the
25 witness' last answer in that you've already ruled that

1 he's not competent to give an opinion on whether or not
2 there was mixing. It's outside the scope of his
3 expertise.

4 MR. LAVELLE: Your Honor, she asked him a
5 question as to whether or not he relied on Langer, and
6 he explained what he did.

7 JUDGE CHAPPELL: She asked if he relied on it.
8 I'm striking -- I'm going to disregard the part of the
9 answer after "I didn't rely on it." Proceed. So, the
10 objection is sustained.

11 BY MS. MICHEL:

12 Q. Now, Mr. Miller, in your report, you stated
13 that you -- Dr. Langer's opinion was that the EC and
14 the HPC were mixed to some extent, correct?

15 A. I believe so.

16 Q. So, when you gave an opinion on infringement
17 based on that understanding of Dr. Langer's testimony,
18 you were not basing your infringement opinion on any
19 testimony by Dr. Langer that there was homogenous
20 mixing throughout the coating. Is that right?

21 A. I considered that -- that testimony in my -- in
22 my report, and when I said, if you read my previous
23 answer back, I think to some extent, and that included
24 some or all of it was mixed.

25 Q. Does your opinion on infringement require that

1 there be homogenous mixing in the coating, assuming for
2 a moment that the term "coating material" requires
3 homogenous mixing?

4 A. I don't understand that one.

5 MS. MICHEL: Could you read back the question,
6 please, and I'll try again.

7 (The record was read as follows:)

8 "QUESTION: Does your opinion on infringement
9 require that there be homogenous mixing in the coating,
10 assuming for a moment that the term 'coating material'
11 requires homogenous mixing?"

12 BY MS. MICHEL:

13 Q. All right, I'll withdraw that question.

14 Mr. Miller, does your opinion on claim
15 interpretation -- let me withdraw that.

16 Assuming Judge DuBois had ruled that the term
17 "coating material" required that there be mixing, do
18 you understand ESI had to have been arguing that the
19 term "coating material" required homogenous mixing?

20 A. May I have the question back, please?

21 (The record was read as follows:)

22 "QUESTION: Assuming Judge DuBois had ruled
23 that the term 'coating material' required that there be
24 mixing, do you understand ESI had to have been arguing
25 that the term 'coating material' required homogenous

1 mixing?"

2 THE WITNESS: I don't know how to answer that
3 question. I'm not -- I'm sorry.

4 BY MS. MICHEL:

5 Q. Do you understand ESI to have been arguing at
6 the Markman hearing that the term "coating material"
7 required homogenous mixing of the ethylcellulose and
8 the HPC?

9 A. In the claim?

10 Q. In the claim, yes.

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Now, if Judge DuBois had accepted ESI's
13 position and ruled that the term "coating material"
14 required homogenous mixing, would you agree with me
15 that only partial mixing would not satisfy a term
16 literally requiring homogenous mixing?

17 A. Not necessarily, because the way the claim
18 reads with respect to the term "coating material," if
19 the court required that the coating material be
20 interpreted to mean a mixture, then the claim has no
21 limitation in it regarding to what extent there be a
22 mixture. If there are two layers applied in -- if the
23 layers were applied in sequence, as was the case in
24 ESI's methodology for making the product --

25 Q. Mr. Miller, I'm afraid you're going beyond the

1 scope of my question at the moment.

2 A. I'm trying to answer the question.

3 Q. Let me ask you, you're -- the answer that you
4 just gave assumed that the court would issue a claim
5 interpretation which required mixture of the EC and HPC
6 but not homogenous mixing. Isn't that right?

7 A. Right, right.

8 Q. All right. Now, I am asking you to assume a
9 hypothetical --

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. -- in which Judge DuBois accepted the position
12 presented by ESI and held that the claim required
13 homogenous mixing.

14 A. Right.

15 Q. If the court ruled that the claim terms
16 requiring homogenous -- required homogenous mixing,
17 would a coating having only partial mixing infringe
18 that claim?

19 A. I believe so, because the claim -- the claim is
20 open-ended, and the word "comprising" appears in that
21 claim, and if it comprises a coating and the coating is
22 characterized as containing a mixture, it doesn't limit
23 the claim to one in which the -- the only form in which
24 the HPC and EC would be present would be in that
25 mixture.

1 Q. Mr. Miller, I'm asking you to assume a
2 hypothetical in which the claim -- in which the court
3 has interpreted the claim to require at least one layer
4 which contained a homogenous mixture of HPC and EC.

5 A. Right.

6 Q. Now, if ESI's product had no layers containing
7 a homogenous mixture of HPC and EC, could that product
8 have literally infringed the claim?

9 A. No.

10 Q. Thank you.

11 Let's put up the claim, please, and I believe
12 you can find the patent at CX 12.

13 Your Honor, I suspect I only have five to ten
14 minutes left in the sense of if you're considering a
15 lunch break or whatever, I can just press forward.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: We're going to break around --
17 sometime after 1:15.

18 BY MS. MICHEL:

19 Q. Rachel, if you could please go to the claim in
20 column 8 and expand it, please. All right, and Rachel,
21 could you expand the paragraph that begins "A coating
22 material" in claim 1.

23 Now, there's been a lot of discussion about
24 this term "a coating material," and I believe it was
25 your testimony that the term "a coating material" here,

1 that the plain language understanding of that term
2 would -- would suggest that separate layers of HPC and
3 EC were encompassed within the interpretation of "a
4 coating material." Is that right?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Now, isn't it true, Mr. Miller, that -- excuse
7 me for a moment.

8 Now, Mr. Miller, isn't it true that the patent
9 itself, including the claims and the specification and
10 the prosecution history, are the most legally
11 significant or the most legally -- the most significant
12 source of legally operative meaning of a disputed claim
13 term?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. So, would you agree with me then that claim
16 interpretation always requires some review of the
17 specification?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Now, would you agree with me that at at least
20 one place in this patent, the specification describes
21 the potassium chloride crystals as being coated with a
22 polymeric mixture of EC and HPC?

23 A. I don't recall the specific place, but I do
24 recall that that word -- that that phrase does appear,
25 yes.

1 Q. And would you agree with me that the
2 manufacturing process described in the specification
3 could only result in a coating that had a mixture of
4 HPC and EC?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Would you agree with me that all of the
7 examples described in the specification have potassium
8 crystals coated with a material which is a mixture of
9 EC and HPC?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Now, looking -- turning back to the claim
12 language, it recites, "a coating material for
13 individual potassium chloride crystals, the coating
14 material comprising ethylcellulose," and then it goes
15 on, "hydroxypropylcellulose."

16 So, in this term "a coating material,"
17 "material" is a noun here, isn't it?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And "coating" is an adjective. It describes
20 the kind of material, doesn't it?

21 A. I'm not sure it's an adjective. You could read
22 it that way. I read it as being one -- a collective --
23 a two-word noun, "a coating material."

24 Q. You agree with me it's possible, even looking
25 at the plain language of the term "coating material,"

1 to describe the word "coating" here as an adjective,
2 though. It's possible you said.

3 A. It's possible, yes.

4 Q. So, what this claim describes -- so, what this
5 claim recites is a coating material -- a coating
6 material which has at least two components,
7 ethylcellulose and HPC. Is that right?

8 A. I would prefer to use the term "comprising EC
9 and HPC."

10 Q. All right. And the term "comprising," when
11 used by patent lawyers, means that we can add in other
12 things. There can be other things, but there's got to
13 be at least what follows the term "comprising." Is
14 that fair?

15 A. Yes, yes.

16 Q. So, what we have here and what we're debating
17 is the plain meaning of the term "a coating material
18 comprising two components," right?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Now, if I have one material and it has two
21 components, would you agree with me that the plain
22 understanding of that term is that those two components
23 have to be mixed so that the material will have only
24 one characteristic?

25 A. No.

1 Q. And would you agree with me that if I have two
2 separate layers, that I have two materials?

3 A. No.

4 Q. And would you agree with me that if I have two
5 layers and each of those layers has a different
6 composition and different characteristics, that I have
7 two materials?

8 A. In the context of this claim or in general? If
9 you're asking me in the context of this claim, I read
10 the word "coating material" as not being limited to
11 one -- to one layer.

12 Q. Let me ask you in general, then. Would you
13 agree with me that if I have two layers and each layer
14 has a different composition and different
15 characteristic, that the general understanding of the
16 word "material," outside the context of this claim,
17 would be that I have two materials?

18 A. I can't answer the question unless there is a
19 context.

20 Q. Okay. Now, there was some debate about whether
21 or not this claim can cover coatings -- a product
22 having one layer or two layers. Is that right?

23 A. Repeat the question, please. I mean, have it
24 read back.

25 (The record was read as follows:)

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 "QUESTION: Now, there was some debate about
2 whether or not this claim can cover coatings -- a
3 product having one layer or two layers. Is that
4 right?"

5 THE WITNESS: With respect to the term "coating
6 material," yes.

7 BY MS. MICHEL:

8 Q. So, with respect to the -- so, the issue of --
9 let me ask you this:

10 The issue of whether or not there could be one
11 layer or two layers in the product, in the coating on
12 the product, doesn't address the issue of the meaning
13 of the term "a coating material."

14 A. I think you have it backwards. You first --
15 you first address the meaning of the word "coating
16 material," and then you compare it with whatever you
17 want to compare it with. You determine the meaning of
18 the word "coating material," and my assessment of the
19 evidence and the arguments presented on both sides is
20 that the coating material is not to be limited to a
21 homogenous mixture. It may include that, but it is not
22 necessarily -- it is not necessarily limited to it.
23 And there's no evidence in the patent that says it is.
24 None whatsoever.

25 Q. And there is no evidence in the patent or the

1 prosecution history ever referring to a coating
2 material as two separate layers of two chemically
3 distinct materials. Isn't that right?

4 A. The absence of that language does not
5 preclude --

6 Q. It was a yes or no --

7 A. -- the interpretation of the claim to include
8 that.

9 Q. -- it was a yes or no question.

10 There is nothing in either the specification or
11 the prosecution history, whichever refers to the term
12 "a coating material," as encompassing two chemically
13 distinct materials.

14 A. In ipsissima verba, you're right, correct.

15 Q. Thank you.

16 I have nothing further, Your Honor.

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Redirect?

18 MR. LAVELLE: Yes, if I could just have one
19 moment.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

21 (Counsel conferring.)

22 MR. LAVELLE: I just have a couple of
23 questions, if I could, Your Honor.

24 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

25 BY MR. LAVELLE:

1 Q. Well, first of all, you were asked some
2 questions about whether or not Dr. Hopfenberg could
3 have been here, and let me just ask you first of all,
4 do you know of any reason why -- strike that. Let me
5 just move on.

6 The documents that you reviewed in reaching
7 your conclusion, were they documents that are available
8 to all -- to both of the parties in this case or all
9 three of the parties in this case?

10 A. That would be my understanding, yes.

11 Q. Okay. And the deposition testimony that you
12 relied on, was that deposition testimony that's
13 available to all of the parties in this case?

14 A. I believe so.

15 Q. And --

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. -- the pleadings and other papers you relied
18 on, they are available to all of the parties in this
19 case?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And the law that you applied, did you apply any
22 sort of secret rules or was it generally available
23 patent law principles?

24 A. Patent law principles in citable decisions.

25 Q. And did you, in fact, cite statutes and law in

1 your report?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And somebody could look up those statutes and
4 laws and see if you cited them correctly, I suppose,
5 right?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And if one of my partners wanted to analyze it
8 and see if they came to the same objective conclusion
9 as you, there's no reason they couldn't do that, is
10 there?

11 A. No.

12 Q. Okay. And if the Federal Trade Commission
13 wants to review the facts and the law and apply the law
14 to the facts, they can do that and come to the same --
15 come to a conclusion about whether they have the same
16 conclusion as you, correct?

17 A. Yes.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Lavelle, I'd rather hear
19 his testimony than yours. Let's try not to lead the
20 witness so much.

21 MR. LAVELLE: I don't have anything else, Your
22 Honor, thank you.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, did he answer that one?

24 THE WITNESS: I said yes.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

1 Recross?

2 MS. MICHEL: Recross, Your Honor.

3 RECROSS EXAMINATION

4 BY MS. MICHEL:

5 Q. Mr. Miller, you didn't review any pretrial
6 briefs, did you?

7 A. In this case?

8 Q. You didn't review any pretrial briefs from the
9 ESI-Schering litigation, did you?

10 A. Yes, I did.

11 Q. Pretrial briefs?

12 A. Pretrial briefs, yes.

13 Q. And were those briefs prepared by both parties?

14 A. I read the pretrial brief of ESI.

15 Q. Do you know why you didn't read a pretrial
16 brief by Schering?

17 A. It wasn't in the multiple number of banker's
18 boxes that were provided to me. Frankly, I had plenty
19 of arguments on one -- both sides of the case, so not
20 having one brief or another probably wouldn't have
21 affected the outcome of my analysis, but I did review
22 carefully ESI's pretrial brief.

23 Q. So, is it possible --

24 A. That's what it was called. I assume that's
25 what it was.

1 Q. You didn't review any witness lists, any trial
2 witness lists, did you?

3 A. No.

4 Q. And you didn't review any exhibit lists, did
5 you?

6 A. In the ESI case?

7 Q. Excuse me, thank you, for the Schering-ESI
8 case, that's right.

9 A. Trial -- trial lists or deposition lists?

10 Q. Any exhibit lists prepared for the trial in the
11 ESI-Schering case.

12 A. No.

13 MS. MICHEL: All right, nothing further.

14 MR. LAVELLE: Nothing further, Your Honor.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you, Mr. Miller. You're
16 excused.

17 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Let's take about an hour
19 recess for lunch. We'll reconvene at 2:15.

20 (Whereupon, at 1:15 p.m., a lunch recess was
21 taken.)

22

23

24

25

1 AFTERNOON SESSION

2 (2:15 p.m.)

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Schering-Plough, are you ready
4 to call your next witness?

5 MS. SHORES: We are, Your Honor.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Proceed.

7 MS. SHORES: Schering calls Ray Russo.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Raise your right hand, please.

9 Whereupon--

10 RAYMOND RUSSO

11 a witness, called for examination, having been first
12 duly sworn, was examined and testified as follows:

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you, have a seat.

14 State your full name for the record, please.

15 THE WITNESS: Raymond Russo.

16 DIRECT EXAMINATION

17 BY MS. SHORES:

18 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Russo.

19 A. Good afternoon.

20 Q. Mr. Russo, where do you live?

21 A. I live on 857 Bradford Avenue in Westfield, New
22 Jersey.

23 Q. And what is your educational background
24 starting with college, sir?

25 A. Undergraduate, I attended Rutgers University,

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 have a degree in economics. I have a graduate degree,
2 MBA, in accounting from Rutgers. And I'm a CPA in the
3 State of New Jersey.

4 Q. And how are you employed?

5 A. I currently work for Schering-Plough
6 Corporation.

7 Q. And what is your position at Schering-Plough?

8 A. I'm the senior director of cardiovascular
9 marketing for Schering-Plough Corporation.

10 Q. How long have you served in that capacity?

11 A. As a senior director of marketing, I've been in
12 marketing for a little over six years.

13 Q. And how long have you been employed by
14 Schering-Plough?

15 A. Almost 20 years.

16 Q. And can you just take us through the various
17 positions that you've held over the past 20 years?

18 A. Sure. In the first half of my career, for the
19 first ten years, I had various positions within
20 finance, including international audits, corporate
21 finance, financial analysts, marketing finance and
22 primarily traveled my career through the finance area.

23 I moved over into marketing in managed care
24 after about ten years, and I was the director of
25 contracts and pricing for approximately two years, and

1 the last six years I've been in marketing.

2 Q. What are your duties and responsibilities as
3 senior director for sales and marketing for
4 cardiovascular products?

5 A. For in-line products we establish the strategic
6 direction, we identify key issues, including our
7 tactical plans and marketing plans. We have
8 responsibility for establishing those plans. We do
9 sales forecasting. We do market assessments. We also
10 are responsible within our therapy area for business
11 development and in-licensing responsibilities. So,
12 it's kind of standard marketing stuff, but primarily
13 strategic direction for the cardiovascular therapy
14 area.

15 Q. What specific products do you currently have
16 marketing responsibility for?

17 A. Currently I have marketing responsibility for a
18 product called Integrelin. It's a GP2B3A inhibitor.
19 It's used for acute coronary syndrome.

20 I also recently attained responsibility for a
21 product called Zetia. It's ezetimibe. It's a
22 cholesterol absorption inhibitor. And I also have
23 responsibility for the unpromoted products K-Dur,
24 Nitro-Dur, Normodyne and -- K-Dur, Nitro-Dur, Normodyne
25 and Imdur.

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025

1 Q. And how long have you responsibility over
2 K-Dur?

3 A. I just recently got it back within the last six
4 months, but in the beginning of my marketing career, I
5 had K-Dur responsibility back in the mid-nineties.

6 Q. And to whom did you report in the mid-1990s?

7 A. I reported to Marty Driscoll, vice president of
8 sales and marketing for Key Pharmaceuticals.

9 Q. Mr. Russo, what is K-Dur?

10 A. K-Dur is potassium chloride.

11 Q. And what is it used to treat?

12 A. It's used to treat primarily potassium
13 depletion in coronary artery disease patients. These
14 patients often are given products that are diuretics,
15 and they are, quote unquote, nonpotassium stearates, so
16 they are a potassium supplement to get these people's
17 potassium levels in balance.

18 Q. How many dosage strengths does K-Dur come in?

19 A. It comes in K-Dur 10 mEq and K-Dur 20 mEq.

20 Q. What market does K-Dur compete in?

21 A. The potassium chloride supplement market.

22 Q. Is that sometimes referred to loosely at
23 Schering as the potassium market?

24 A. Yes, um-hum.

25 Q. If you could open your booklet there, I've

1 given you a binder, to CX 17, please.

2 Sir, do you recognize CX 17?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And what is it, sir?

5 A. This is a marketing backgrounder. It's
6 provided each year by the marketing research
7 department. It's given to the product management team
8 in anticipation of their preparation of their marketing
9 plan.

10 Q. If you could turn to the second page of that
11 document, you should have it in front of you and on
12 your nifty screen there. It says there in the first
13 sentence under the heading Market Overview, "K-DUR
14 competes in a crowded \$264 million potassium market
15 which continues to grow in overall dollar sales with an
16 8% increase in 1995 over 1994."

17 How would -- well, let's first go back to the
18 first page of this document. What is the date of this
19 document?

20 A. The date is July 1st, 1996.

21 Q. And how would you describe the -- how would you
22 characterize the level of competition in the potassium
23 chloride supplement market in 1996?

24 A. It was intense. It was a very crowded market.
25 I called it an undifferentiated market, but it's a very

1 crowded, competitive market.

2 Q. What do you mean by "undifferentiated"?

3 A. Well, this is potassium supplements, and
4 potassium supplements basically are found -- you know,
5 you can find potassium in food, you can find it in
6 fruits and vegetables. This is a relatively simple
7 compound that even can be purchased at health food
8 stores. So, it's hard to differentiate your product
9 within this marketplace.

10 Q. And was the potassium supplement -- I'm sorry,
11 potassium chloride supplement market crowded and
12 competitive in 1997 and 1998 as well?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. How many potassium chloride products were there
15 in the market at that time, do you recall?

16 A. A lot. My recollection, there were greater
17 than 15.

18 Q. And if you could turn to the page of CX 17 that
19 is marked on the bottom in the right-hand corner SP
20 003951, do you have that page, sir?

21 A. I do.

22 Q. There are some products listed on the left-hand
23 column. Is that correct?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Are the products there potassium chloride

1 products that competed with K-Dur at the time?

2 A. They are.

3 Q. Now, over on the table on the left there, sir,
4 I've put a number of pharmaceutical products -- the
5 actual physical table as opposed to the one on the
6 page. Can you identify what those are just generally,
7 sir?

8 A. Yes, those are potassium chloride supplements.

9 Q. And just for the record, they bear exhibit
10 numbers for identification purposes only of SPX 2209 to
11 2231.

12 Mr. Russo, how many potassium chloride
13 supplements are on the table to your left, sir?

14 A. Oh, boy, there are about 15.

15 Q. And the two --

16 A. More than 15.

17 Q. Would you mind counting them up just so the
18 record's clear?

19 A. Sure. I see 23.

20 Q. The first two right there on that corner, they
21 should bear the exhibit numbers SPX 2209 and SPX 2210,
22 do you see those?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And what are those?

25 A. Those are K-Dur, K-Dur 10 and K-Dur 20.

1 Q. What is the difference between K-Dur 10 and
2 K-Dur 20?

3 A. It's basically the amount of potassium within
4 the tablet.

5 Q. And are some of those products generic
6 products?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Do all of the products on the table to your
9 left, do they all compete in the same market?

10 A. Generally speaking, yes. Sometimes we'll
11 differentiate from the liquids, but by and large, the
12 potassium supplement market are the products -- all of
13 these compete in that marketplace, yes.

14 Q. And sir, what therapeutic differences are
15 there, if any, among these 23 or so potassium chloride
16 supplements?

17 A. There are none.

18 Q. Mr. Russo, what involvement did you have in the
19 pricing of K-Dur?

20 A. I'm responsible for recommending price
21 increases. I was not on the product when the brand was
22 originally launched, so I didn't establish the initial
23 pricing, but I was responsible for price increases, I
24 was responsible for a recommendation for contract
25 pricing to managed care organizations, and future

1 pricing strategies.

2 Q. What effect, if any, did the existence of these
3 20-odd competitors to K-Dur have on K-Dur's pricing?

4 A. Well, it had a depressing effect. I mean, we
5 could not -- we had to price these at a level that was
6 competitive with the generic products. So, it didn't
7 allow for a premium price, if you will.

8 Q. Why was that?

9 A. Because this is -- as I had mentioned,
10 potassium supplements are fairly easy and very
11 available products. So, there are many competitive
12 low-priced entries in that marketplace.

13 Q. Now, if you could turn in your binder, sir, to
14 the document marked CX 18, do you have that, sir?

15 A. I do.

16 Q. What is CX 18, sir?

17 A. CX 18 is the 1997 K-Dur marketing plan.

18 Q. Were marketing plans prepared for K-Dur from
19 time to time at Schering?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And what is the date of this marketing plan?

22 A. September 10th, 1996.

23 Q. And can you turn to the page in that marketing
24 plan marked at the bottom with 00041. Do you have that
25 page, sir?

1 A. I do.

2 Q. Do you see a pie chart on that page?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. What is that pie chart?

5 A. The pie chart represents the total
6 prescriptions available in the potassium chloride
7 supplement market year to date through April of 1996.

8 Q. What market does that pie chart represent?

9 A. That's the potassium chloride supplement
10 market.

11 Q. Is there a market share reflected in that pie
12 chart for K-Dur?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And what is that?

15 A. Thirty-seven percent.

16 Q. When Schering calculates K-Dur's market share,
17 what market does it use?

18 A. It uses the potassium chloride supplement
19 market, primarily the tablet market.

20 Q. And how much of -- if you were to take a
21 slightly broader market of potassium chloride
22 supplements to include the other potassium chloride
23 supplements, what percentage of that market consists of
24 potassium chloride supplements that are not tablets?

25 A. Oh, it's a relatively small amount. I believe

1 it's about 20 percent.

2 Q. Now, in the 1996 to 1998 time frame, what was
3 K-Dur's market share in the market for tablets?

4 A. It was approximately 37 to 39 percent during
5 that time frame.

6 Q. And what was K-Dur's market share in the market
7 for potassium chloride supplements?

8 A. I'm sorry, it's approximately that amount, 37
9 percent.

10 Q. And is that, sir, that 37 percent, is that for
11 K-Dur 10 or K-Dur 20 or both?

12 A. Oh, it's for both.

13 Q. How did K-Dur obtain that market share?

14 A. I think it was good marketing, but frankly, a
15 lot of it has to do with -- these are relatively I
16 think promotional-sensitive markets. So, we invested
17 very heavily in a couple of things. We invested
18 heavily in field force effort, so we edged our field
19 base representatives on understanding the potassium
20 chloride market so they could educate physicians. We
21 branded our product. We wanted brand loyalty and name
22 identification so physicians would write for our
23 product specifically. And we had a number of
24 significant promotional programs over that approximate
25 ten-year period that heavily promoted and marketed

1 K-Dur and -- K-Dur 10 and K-Dur 20.

2 Q. You made a reference to field force. What is a
3 field force?

4 A. I'm sorry, those are sales representatives that
5 are employed by Schering-Plough that provide
6 information to physicians regarding therapy areas and
7 products.

8 Q. If you could turn in your binder now to the
9 exhibit marked CX 20, do you have that, sir?

10 A. I do.

11 Q. What is CX 20?

12 A. CX 20 is the 1998 K-Dur marketing plan.

13 Q. And what is the date on CX 20?

14 A. August 1st, 1997.

15 Q. If you could turn to page 5 on that document,
16 which is marked SP 004034, please, do you have that?

17 A. I do.

18 Q. I'd like to focus your attention on the
19 paragraph under the heading Sales. Do you see that,
20 sir?

21 A. I do.

22 Q. It says there, "The Potassium Chloride Market
23 continued to grow in both dollars and prescriptions in
24 1996."

25 Is that true?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. It says also that, "In 1996, the major products
3 driving this increase in the Potassium Chloride Market
4 were K-DUR (10 and 20 mEq tablets), the generic KCLs,
5 and Klor Con (8 and 10 mEq tablets)."

6 Do you see that, sir?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Is that true?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And by "generic KCLs," what do you understand
11 that to mean?

12 A. That's generic potassium supplements, generic
13 tablets.

14 Q. If you could turn to the next page of this
15 exhibit, there's a reference in the paragraph under the
16 pie chart there to, "our major competitors, Klor Con
17 and generic KCL."

18 Do you see that?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Who were K-Dur's major competitors in this time
21 frame?

22 A. Well, during that time period, it was Klor Con
23 and the generic potassium supplements. There were some
24 other smaller competitors, but those were the big ones.

25 Q. And why do you consider generics to be -- why

1 did you consider generics to be major competitors to
2 K-Dur?

3 A. Well, because this marketplace, again, is
4 simple potassium supplementation. If we weren't sure
5 that a prescription was written for K-Dur or K-Dur 20,
6 there was a real possibility that it could be switched
7 to a generic potassium supplement, and so as that -- as
8 the population aged and more patients became available
9 to that marketplace to get treated by these products,
10 often times the prescription would be filled not with a
11 branded product but would be filled with a generic
12 potassium supplement if it wasn't specified otherwise.

13 Q. How did Schering go about marketing K-Dur
14 during this time frame?

15 A. Well, we spent a lot of time educating
16 physicians about the need for potassium
17 supplementation. We tried to brand, you know, our name
18 and our image. We tried to be associated with good
19 patient care. We tried to educate our field force
20 regarding optimum potassium supplementation. So, we
21 thought that as a result, people would remember our
22 name and then prescribe our product.

23 Q. Does the fact that K-Dur 20 comes in a 20
24 milliequivalent tablet give it a therapeutic advantage?

25 A. No, not a therapeutic advantage.

1 Q. And does the fact that K-Dur 20 comes in a 20
2 milliequivalent tablet give it a marketing advantage?

3 A. Well, a little bit. I mean, it gives us
4 something to differentiate it from. It's a larger
5 tablet. There's more concentrated product. So, we
6 tried to make something out of that, yes.

7 Q. Are there any marketing disadvantages to the
8 fact that K-Dur 20 comes in a 20 milliequivalent pill?

9 A. There's one -- there is a marketing
10 disadvantage, and that's the size of the tablet.

11 Q. And why is the size a disadvantage?

12 A. We used to kid, we used to call it a horse
13 pill. I don't know if you have it here, but it's a
14 fairly large tablet, and it's -- it's often the largest
15 tablet these elderly patients take. So, we sometimes
16 have a real challenge getting around that size when we
17 promoted it to physicians and they had to, you know,
18 educate their patients.

19 Q. So, for the record, I'm holding up a K-Dur 20.
20 Does this look recognizable to you?

21 A. It looks about the size, that's it.

22 Q. And there's a line here down the middle of the
23 pill. What purpose does that line serve?

24 A. That's called a scoring, and many tablets have
25 that. You use that so that you can break the tablet in

1 half.

2 Q. Why would someone want to break the tablet in
3 half?

4 A. It makes it easier to swallow, makes it easier
5 to mix in liquid, simpler to take basically.

6 Q. How much potassium chloride does a physician
7 typically prescribe in terms of how much of it a
8 patient has to take in one day?

9 A. Yeah, I mean, generally speaking, generally, a
10 physician will prescribe approximately 40 mEq of
11 potassium per day. That's on average, depending on the
12 disease and the level of potassium that they observe,
13 but that's approximately the amount.

14 Q. And if a patient had been prescribed 40
15 milliequivalents of potassium, would the prescription
16 typically require the patient to take that all at once?

17 A. Well, it generally would -- because of the size
18 of the tablet and the patterns that these elderly CAD
19 patients take these drugs, often times they will tell
20 them to take them with meals, so it will likely be once
21 in the morning and once in the evening, so twice a day.

22 Q. And you made a reference there to CAD patients.
23 Who are those?

24 A. I'm sorry, coronary artery disease, heart
25 patients.

1 Q. Thank you.

2 Now, if the prescription was for 40
3 milliequivalent but it was written for a 10
4 milliequivalent product, how many tablets would that
5 mean a patient had to take a day?

6 A. They would have to take four tablets of 10 mEq
7 a day.

8 Q. And again, would such a prescription typically
9 require the patient to take the four pills all at once?

10 A. That's a lot of potassium. They will generally
11 split it out two 10s in the morning and two 10s in the
12 evening likely.

13 Q. And again, if the prescription had been written
14 for 40 milliequivalents but the prescription was for
15 K-Dur 20, how many pills would that require the patient
16 to take?

17 A. Two.

18 Q. And how many times a day would the patient have
19 to take that?

20 A. I mean, generally speaking, again, it would be
21 one tablet in the morning and once in the evening. So,
22 twice a day, one tablet twice a day.

23 Q. If we could go back to CX 18 and turn to page
24 28, I believe it's the last page of that document. Do
25 you see there's a heading call Promotional Budget

1 there, sir?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. The first sentence underneath that heading
4 says, "Achieving our goal of \$200 million in sales for
5 1997 will require increased market penetration and
6 market expansion activities."

7 Do you see that?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. It then it says, there's a line underneath some
10 bullet points that says, "Total promotional dollars
11 needed for 1997," and then there's a figure, \$9 and a
12 half million.

13 Do you see that?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Did Schering spend approximately \$9 and a half
16 million in promotional dollars in 1997?

17 A. That was our approximate spend, yes.

18 Q. Does that figure capture all of Schering's
19 expenditures for the promotion of K-Dur in that year?

20 A. No, it only pertains to the marketing budget.
21 In addition, we would have spent on field force
22 resources, so a large portion of our field team would
23 have been promoting K-Dur, and those -- and the costs
24 associated with that team would have been applied to
25 the drug.

1 Q. Approximately how much money did Schering spend
2 on its field force activities in this time frame?

3 A. For K-Dur?

4 Q. Yes.

5 A. My -- I estimate about \$10 million. That would
6 be approximate. I'd have to recall where their
7 positioning in the call cycle was, but approximately
8 \$10 million.

9 Q. So, that \$10 million, would that be on top of
10 the \$9 and a half million that's represented here?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Now, how does that figure compare with what
13 Schering's competitors spent on promotion and marketing
14 of their potassium chloride products during this time
15 frame?

16 A. We were by far the market leader in spending
17 levels certainly and in prescriptions.

18 Q. Now, how does the price of K-Dur 20 during this
19 time frame compare with the price of other potassium
20 chloride supplements?

21 A. It's a -- it's approximately the same. It
22 depends on the managed care contract, but it's fairly
23 similar.

24 Q. As part of your responsibilities as senior
25 director of marketing and sales for cardiovascular

1 products, and now I'm focusing on the mid-nineties time
2 frame that you referred to earlier, did you have sales
3 forecasts prepared?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Why did you have sales forecasts prepared?

6 A. It's a standard practice when you're preparing
7 your strategic plan to basically understand trends in
8 the marketplace, performance of your product and assess
9 profitability of your product. So, it's a standard
10 practice.

11 Q. Would they sometimes contain different
12 scenarios?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Why was that?

15 A. Well, you're trying to anticipate
16 contingencies, that would be new entrants into the
17 marketplaces, new therapies that might obsolete your
18 product, new changes in the market that might impact
19 both positively and negatively how you were able to
20 sell and promote your product.

21 Q. Going back to some of the potassium chloride
22 supplements that are on the table to your left, are
23 some of those branded products?

24 A. Let's see, yes, that looks like a brand. Yes.

25 Q. And going back again to sales forecasts, was it

1 your practice to regularly review such forecasts for
2 the products that you had responsibility for?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Did the sales forecasts that you reviewed, did
5 they sometimes contain assumptions about the entry of
6 generic products?

7 A. They did.

8 Q. What were those assumptions generally based on?

9 A. Well, we try to obtain third-party information.
10 Our market research department reviews either press
11 releases or SEC filings or basically industry
12 information that basically -- that basically will
13 identify types of products that are, quote unquote, "in
14 development," you know, vis-a-vis some of the generic
15 manufacturers.

16 Q. Was it customary for the people who prepared
17 these sales forecasts to be in contact with Schering's
18 legal department about the status of various patent
19 litigations?

20 A. No.

21 Q. Do you ever recall that being done?

22 A. No.

23 Q. Okay, if you could turn in your binder there to
24 CX 682, do you have that document, sir?

25 A. I do.

1 Q. What is CX 682?

2 A. This is a risk authorization form. It's
3 seeking approval to purchase and print packaging
4 materials for a Warrick potassium chloride supplement.

5 Q. And can you tell what the date is of this
6 document?

7 A. It looks like it's March 2nd, 1997.

8 Q. And does this reflect an approved expenditure
9 for packaging materials?

10 A. Yes, it's a request for -- yes.

11 Q. Why were you authorizing -- I'm sorry, and your
12 name is there as authorizing this expenditure. Is that
13 right?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Why were you authorizing an expenditure of
16 \$93,000 to purchase packaging supplies?

17 A. Well, this is just packaging supplies. I mean,
18 this is a risk authorization. We had a division at
19 Schering that actually would launch first mover
20 generics if, in fact, there was another generic
21 competitor that got potentially approved, and what this
22 was doing was manufacturing the purchase of packaging
23 materials, which often had a fairly long lead time.

24 Q. And what was the name of Schering's generic
25 division?

1 A. That was Warrick Pharmaceuticals.

2 Q. What does this document reflect about
3 Schering's beliefs about the likelihood of generic
4 entry at this particular point in time?

5 A. I mean, it basically is preparing us. It
6 doesn't anticipate imminent approval, but it's
7 preparing us in the case of an approval. So, it
8 doesn't, you know, assume that it's going to -- that's
9 why it's a risk authorization. If they knew it was
10 going to be approved, it wouldn't require, you know,
11 risk authorization.

12 Q. If Warrick was intending to go about
13 manufacturing an actual generic version of K-Dur, would
14 there be another risk authorization form like this for
15 the manufacture of the product?

16 A. Likely.

17 Q. And do you recall whether that was done in this
18 time frame?

19 A. I don't.

20 Q. Were there other occasions on which Schering
21 prepared risk authorization expenditures like this or
22 approved expenditures such as this?

23 A. Yeah -- yes. I -- in my portfolio, there were
24 a number of products that were under the threat of
25 potential generics, and occasionally we would -- we

1 would recommend and approve packaging materials for
2 those products.

3 Q. And what happened in those other instances when
4 you approved risk authorization expenditures?

5 A. Well, sometimes -- sometimes we would use them,
6 and -- when the product was approved, and sometimes we
7 would have to D&O, that would be destroy and obsolete
8 them, so...

9 Q. And why did you destroy and obsolete them?

10 A. We felt that there -- you know, there was no
11 pending generic coming, so we destroyed the materials.

12 Q. So, sometimes you had authorized expenditures
13 such as this and it turned out that the authorization
14 was unnecessary. Is that right?

15 A. That's correct.

16 Q. Now, you said earlier that among your
17 responsibilities was the duty to evaluate in-licenses.
18 Is that correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. What does Schering normally do when it
21 evaluates in-licenses?

22 A. Well, basically we'll look at the nature of the
23 product. We'll determine its market potential. We'll
24 determine its fit within our current portfolio. We'll
25 determine if there's a level of investment we can make

1 to make this product even larger than maybe the owner
2 of the license, you know, can do. We'll do some sales
3 forecasting. We'll do some market forecasting. And
4 we'll do basically a financial analysis to see if this
5 is a viable option.

6 Q. And what does Schering normally do in terms of
7 due diligence to evaluate whether to proceed with the
8 opportunity?

9 A. I mean, that depends. I mean, it depends on
10 the nature of the opportunity. If it's an early stage
11 product which is early in development and it's a new
12 and novel compound, we will do a lot. If it's a late
13 stage compound that has, you know, a characterized
14 profile, it has phase III data, clinical data
15 available, and it has a filed NDA, for example, we'll
16 do much less.

17 Q. What relationship is there, if any, between the
18 intensity of Schering's due diligence or evaluation
19 process and the risk involved to Schering with the
20 particular product?

21 A. Well, certainly the higher the risk, the
22 earlier the development, the more involved the, quote
23 unquote, "due diligence" or review process would be.

24 Q. Is there any standard approach that Schering
25 utilizes for purposes of due diligence?

1 A. Not that I know of.

2 Q. What relationship is there, if any, between the
3 stage of a development of a particular product that
4 Schering is evaluating and a risk to Schering in doing
5 a deal?

6 A. Well, the later the stage the product, the
7 higher the opportunity to do the deal in my mind. I
8 mean, you know more about the drug, it's familiar,
9 sometimes it's on the marketplace. So, there's a
10 higher opportunity for a deal to occur the closer it is
11 to market.

12 Q. And what do you mean by "higher opportunity"?

13 A. More likelihood that you'll strike a deal with
14 the licensee, the license holder.

15 Q. Is there more or less risk involved to Schering
16 in doing a deal for a late stage product as compared
17 with an early stage product?

18 A. My belief is there's less risk, and --

19 Q. Less risk with a later stage product?

20 A. Oh, I'm sorry, less -- certainly less risk with
21 a later stage product. There is more that is known
22 about it. You can understand it better. You can even
23 sometimes understand how the market will receive it.
24 So, there's less risk with a later stage product.

25 Q. Did there come a time when Schering became

1 interested in a sustained release niacin product?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. What product was that?

4 A. The product that I was familiar with was a
5 product called Niaspan from Kos Pharmaceuticals.

6 Q. When do you recall Schering being interested in
7 that product?

8 A. In 1996.

9 Q. If you could turn to CX 575 in your binder
10 there, sir, do you recognize that document?

11 A. I do.

12 Q. What is it?

13 A. It is a CV business development subcommittee
14 meeting minute document.

15 Q. And what's the date on it?

16 A. May 27th, 1996.

17 Q. If you could turn to the second page of that
18 document, there's a reference there to Kos' Niaspan.
19 Do you see that?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. It says, "Marketing is still interested in this
22 sustained release niacin product."

23 Do you see that?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. That was true at the time?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. It says, "Action: Mr. Russo."

3 Is that you?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Could you turn back to the first page of this
6 document? Do you see there a reference to a drug
7 called Lipidil?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. What is that?

10 A. Lipidil is a fenofibrate -- it's fenofibrate.
11 It is a fibrate product that's used for the management
12 of dyslipidemias, primarily elevated triglycerides.

13 Q. And was Schering evaluating an opportunity
14 linked to that product at this time?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Did Schering negotiate a deal for that product?

17 A. We did not.

18 Q. What ultimately happened to that product, if
19 anything?

20 A. We stopped our negotiations with this French
21 company. We just felt that we could not make a go of
22 the product for a number of reasons, the way that that
23 was -- that that was currently formulated.

24 Q. Did that product eventually find its way to the
25 marketplace?

1 A. It did.

2 Q. What is it called today?

3 A. Tricor is the brand name. It's -- fenofibrate
4 is its generic name.

5 Q. And again, why was Schering interested in
6 fenofibrate?

7 A. Well, fenofibrate fit into a therapy area that
8 we had a fairly -- a very significant development
9 program ongoing in clinical research, and that would be
10 the management of dyslipidemias or elevated lipids.
11 So, it was a good strategic fit.

12 It was also a product that would likely be sold
13 to a physician base that we currently called on, so it
14 was a good fit for our field force. And, you know, I
15 would call it a -- it was a bridge opportunity to get
16 us from where our products were currently being less
17 and less promoted to our future products which we
18 expected in the year 2001 or 2002.

19 Q. And what future products were those?

20 A. Well, the biggest future product in there is a
21 product that we characterize as SCH 58235, and it's
22 ezetimibe.

23 Q. And what is ezetimibe used to treat?

24 A. Ezetimibe is a cholesterol absorption
25 inhibitor. It works on the small intestine, the brush

1 border of the small intestine, and it reduces LDLs.

2 It's a lipid management product.

3 Q. So, is it fair to call that a cholesterol drug?

4 A. Yes, um-hum.

5 Q. And fenofibrate, is it fair to call that a
6 cholesterol drug?

7 A. Yes, yes.

8 Q. So, when you refer to hyperlipidemia, what is
9 that?

10 A. Oh, it's the cholesterol management
11 marketplace.

12 Q. Now, I think you said that this product is now
13 known as Tricor. Is that correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. How is it doing in the marketplace, do you
16 know?

17 A. Fairly well. I think it's selling about \$300
18 million a year.

19 Q. With the benefit of hindsight, do you wish that
20 Schering had done a deal for Lipidil?

21 A. I do.

22 Q. All right. Going back to Niaspan, why was
23 Schering interested in a sustained release niacin
24 product?

25 A. Well, again, this is a -- this was an excellent

1 bridge product for our lipid management development
2 program. So, niacin was a -- was a very
3 well-characterized product that had certain properties
4 that were unique. It elevated good cholesterol, and so
5 if someone could get around some of the issues
6 regarding Niaspan, this was a very nice product. It
7 fit our product portfolio. We had some available
8 outage in our -- in our field force. So, for both
9 strategic and field force fit reasons, it was a good
10 product for us.

11 Q. And you made a reference there to it being a
12 good bridge product. Bridge to what?

13 A. Oh, I'm sorry. Bridge from, you know, our
14 development program in ezetimibe to ultimate launch of
15 ezetimibe, so we could learn that therapy area,
16 understand the customers, get familiar with them,
17 understand, you know, the disease state, and then when
18 we launched our -- what I consider our blockbuster
19 product, we would be well prepared.

20 Q. If you could turn to SPX 614 in your binder, do
21 you have that, sir?

22 A. I do.

23 Q. This is a memorandum from somebody named Jim
24 Audibert to Distribution dated March 10th, 1997. Is
25 that correct?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Who is Jim Audibert?

3 A. Jim Audibert was my counterpart in global
4 marketing. He was the senior director of global
5 marketing for cardiovascular products and central
6 nervous system products, and he and I worked together
7 in marketing for Schering.

8 Q. And by your "counterpart," do you mean that Mr.
9 Audibert had responsibility for selling
10 cardiovascular -- for selling and marketing
11 cardiovascular products overseas?

12 A. Yes, ex-U.S., and he was also responsible for
13 consistency of strategies worldwide.

14 Q. Whereas you were responsible for the marketing
15 of such products in the United States?

16 A. Only the United States, that's correct.

17 Q. It says here that -- let me zoom in -- "SCH
18 58235 has the potential to be one of the biggest
19 products in the SPRI portfolio."

20 Do you see that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And what is SCH 58235?

23 A. That's our cholesterol absorption inhibitor
24 called ezetimibe.

25 Q. Do you know what the anticipated sales of

1 ezetimibe are currently?

2 A. Well, we have forecasts that go, you know, in
3 the range of \$6 billion, \$7 billion approximately.

4 Q. Is that an annual sales figure?

5 A. Per annum, yes.

6 Q. And how close is ezetimibe to FDA approval?

7 A. We filed our NDA in December of 2001, and we
8 hope for approval by the end of this year.

9 Q. If you go down farther in this document, it
10 says here, "To accomplish this evaluation, the U.S. and
11 global marketing groups have agreed to develop a global
12 commercial assessment."

13 Do you see that, sir?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. What did that relate to?

16 A. We were being asked to estimate the potential
17 of this product worldwide and do some sales
18 forecasting.

19 Q. And what did that project entail?

20 A. Basically assessing the marketplace, assessing
21 this product's position within the marketplace,
22 assuming some sort of pricing strategy, and then
23 forecasting sales dollars.

24 Q. And did that involve an understanding of the
25 worldwide cholesterol market?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. How large was the cholesterol market at the
3 time that Schering was looking at Niaspan?

4 A. Well, in the mid-nineties, it was my
5 recollection that it was in the \$5 to \$7 billion range.
6 It was a significant market.

7 Q. Now, going back to Schering's negotiations with
8 Kos for Niaspan, how did Schering express its interest
9 to Kos, do you know?

10 A. Well, we made a commercial contact to the
11 company.

12 Q. And what do you mean by "commercial contact"?

13 A. I'm sorry, our market -- many of the folks at
14 Kos had also worked at Schering. We were -- we knew
15 each other. This is through affiliations. We knew
16 each other in -- you know, through business
17 relationships. So, we contacted them.

18 Q. Did Schering request any information about
19 Niaspan from Kos?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And did there come a time that Schering
22 received some information from Kos about Niaspan?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. If you could turn to CX 540 in the booklet
25 there, do you have that, sir?

1 A. I do.

2 Q. It's a memorandum dated February 11th, 1997 to
3 Rudy Ress from Karin Gast. Is that right?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And you're copied on that?

6 A. I am.

7 Q. And what is this document, sir?

8 A. This is basically a memo from our business
9 development manager identifying what material had been
10 received from Kos regarding Niaspan.

11 Q. And what did that material consist of?

12 A. It included a Niaspan profile from their IPO,
13 some proposed labeling, excluding an indications
14 section. It gave some proposed labeling, a single page
15 of proposed labeling indications which they believed
16 were likely to be approved. And we got a reprint of
17 their first clinical publication on Niaspan.

18 Q. There's a reference here to confidential
19 disclosure. Had Schering entered into a
20 confidentiality agreement with Kos?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Was Schering expecting to receive more
23 information from Kos?

24 A. Yes, we had hoped to receive some more
25 information.

1 Q. Had Kos by this time submitted a new drug
2 application?

3 A. It was my understanding they had, earlier the
4 previous year.

5 Q. What stage was Niaspan in?

6 A. I would consider it, you know, a phase III
7 prelaunch product, late stage.

8 Q. If you could turn now to CX 543, do you have
9 that?

10 A. I do.

11 Q. And what is CX 543?

12 A. It's a contact report from our business
13 development group regarding a telephone call that
14 myself and Jim Audibert had with the folks from Kos.

15 Q. And the date of it is March 13th, 1997. Is
16 that right?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And again, who is Mr. Audibert?

19 A. Jim Audibert is the senior director of global
20 marketing, and like I said, responsible for
21 cardiovascular products ex-U.S. and global strategies.

22 Q. If I could focus your attention on the second
23 paragraph, it says there that, "Jim in particular
24 wanted to know what is the safety profile for Niaspan."

25 Do you see that?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. What was Mr. Audibert's involvement in
3 evaluating Niaspan?

4 A. Well, as I had said, Jim is responsible for
5 overall global strategy and ex-U.S. strategy. This
6 product had the potential to be a worldwide deal. So,
7 Jim in his role was interested in, you know, the nature
8 of the product.

9 Q. And why was he interested in Niaspan's safety
10 profile?

11 A. Well, Jim -- Jim is a knowledgeable guy. I
12 mean, he's a pharmacist. I think he has a Master's in
13 pharmacology even. And, in fact -- so, he wanted to
14 know a little bit about the profile of Niaspan just to
15 assess it from a -- from a pharmacologic standpoint,
16 because niacin, frankly, had a historic profile that
17 had some safety concerns. So, I think Jim's particular
18 interest there was to assess whether those safety
19 concerns could be limited by this sustained release
20 Niaspan. So, I think that was his particular interest.

21 I mean, Jim actually did this for a number of a
22 therapy areas. He had been involved in asthma/allergy,
23 dermatology, CNS and cardiovascular medicine. So, he
24 was fairly knowledgeable about pharmalogic --
25 pharmacologic products.

1 Q. Going down farther in the document, there's an
2 indication here that, "FDA has completed the medical
3 review and they are currently discussing labeling with
4 Kos."

5 Do you see that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. What is the significance of the FDA having
8 completed the medical review?

9 A. Well, it generally means that most of their
10 major issues are likely to be resolved, and now they're
11 just negotiating finalized labeling prior to approval.

12 Q. Did there come a time when Mr. Audibert
13 consulted with marketing people in Schering's overseas
14 subsidiaries about their interest in a sustained
15 release niacin product?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. If you could turn to CX 544, do you have that?

18 A. I do.

19 Q. This is a memorandum dated March 14th, 1997
20 from Jim Audibert to Distribution. Do you recall
21 seeing this document before?

22 A. I -- I did not see this document. I wasn't
23 copied on this particular document.

24 Q. Let's go to the next page where we can see the
25 distribution. There's some countries there and some

1 people, people's names underneath the countries. Do
2 you know who those people are?

3 A. Yes, they're the marketing directors primarily
4 in cardiovascular medicine for those various
5 subsidiaries.

6 Q. And are these the people who would be
7 responsible for selling Niaspan if Schering had gotten
8 overseas rights to it?

9 A. Yes, they would be primarily responsible for
10 the marketing of Niaspan ex-U.S.

11 Q. And again, I think you said you don't remember
12 seeing this document, but you do recall that Mr.
13 Audibert consulted with some folks in Schering's
14 overseas outfits. Is that right?

15 A. Yes. Yes, Jim had told me he was going to
16 contact the ex-U.S. subs and determine their interest
17 for Niaspan.

18 MR. SILBER: Objection, Your Honor, hearsay.
19 He's testifying to what Mr. Audibert stated.

20 MS. SHORES: Your Honor, I think this witness
21 is perfectly capable of testifying as to what he
22 understood Mr. Audibert was doing.

23 MR. SILBER: Your Honor, I believe Mr.
24 Audibert's going to be called as a witness. Mr.
25 Audibert can testify as to what he stated.

1 MS. SHORES: Your Honor, both of these people
2 have been -- they had the opportunity to have taken
3 their depositions on these subjects. There's really no
4 debate about what either of them is going to say about
5 this issue.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: The biggest problem you have
7 is the answer is not responsive to the question. You
8 can restate the question or have the court reporter
9 read it back, but I am going to sustain the objection,
10 not on hearsay, but because it wasn't responsive.

11 BY MS. SHORES:

12 Q. What responses do you recall Mr. Audibert
13 getting from these overseas marketing people?

14 A. I understood that Jim had gotten a number of
15 responses from the overseas subs and that a number of
16 them were very favorable in the response and a number
17 of them were less than favorable in the response.

18 Q. Did Schering do any market research in
19 connection with its evaluation of Niaspan?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. If you could turn to CX 576, do you have that,
22 sir?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. And what is CX 576?

25 A. This is a market research assessment done by a

1 third party regarding Niaspan.

2 Q. Did Schering have to pay for this market
3 research?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Approximately how much did Schering have to
6 pay?

7 A. Generally these types of evaluations cost
8 anywhere from \$20,000 to \$30,000.

9 Q. And what does that signify, if anything, about
10 the level of Schering's interest in Niaspan?

11 A. It demonstrates we were very serious about this
12 product.

13 Q. Did Schering consult with any other third
14 parties in connection with its evaluation of Niaspan?

15 A. Yes, we actually had a Lipid Advisory Panel
16 meeting that not only discussed Niaspan but discussed
17 our development program in cholesterol management, and
18 we discussed that product with them.

19 In addition, we have consulting arrangements
20 with thought leaders in the area of cardiovascular
21 disease, and we discussed the product with them.

22 Q. Who are the members of this Lipid Advisory
23 Committee?

24 A. I don't --

25 Q. I'm not asking for specific names.

1 A. I don't recall them all, but Dr. Vogel, Dr.
2 Hunninghake, I believe Dr. Gotto. These were some of
3 the leading lipid manager -- you know, thought leaders
4 in this area of treatment.

5 Q. Did you participate in any negotiations with
6 Kos?

7 A. I did.

8 Q. What sort of arrangement was being discussed
9 with Kos?

10 A. We understood that Kos was seeking to have a
11 co-promotion arrangement.

12 Q. What is a co-promotion arrangement?

13 A. A co-promotion arrangement generally means that
14 both parties would be involved in the sales and
15 marketing of the product under one brand name. So,
16 generally they would split the effort that was done in
17 the field force, and they would split the cost of the
18 marketing.

19 Q. How does a co-promotion arrangement differ from
20 an in-license?

21 A. Well, a strict in-license means that you would
22 retain all control and all rights over the product.
23 So, you'd be responsible for all of the expenditures,
24 all of the investment, all of the strategic direction,
25 and you basically would not have a partner. You'd

1 maintain control of the product.

2 Q. Do you recall specifically what Kos -- what
3 terms Kos was seeking as part of a co-promotion
4 arrangement?

5 A. I recall some of the specifics on the
6 co-promotion arrangement. They were seeking to retain
7 marketing control. They were seeking to establish
8 themselves with a field force. They were seeking to
9 invest I believe it was up to 50 percent of the
10 promotional effort. And they were seeking to split the
11 resulting profit from the effort.

12 Q. Was Kos seeking anything with respect to a
13 level of call activity?

14 A. Yes. They wanted a very specific level of
15 primary detail, what we call, and primary detail means
16 that this product would have to be the first product
17 that a rep would present to a physician. And in our
18 way of thinking, that's a very valuable -- a valuable
19 commodity.

20 Q. What was Schering's reaction to the request for
21 primary positioning?

22 A. Frankly, that's very -- that would have been
23 very difficult in this kind of co-promotion arrangement
24 where we were sharing the profits.

25 Q. Why is that?

1 A. We had other products that frank -- that were
2 our own product in which we would receive all of the
3 profit that we would rather have used that primary
4 detail on. So, the level of primary detail that they
5 were requesting just was not in sync with our available
6 outage.

7 Q. Was Kos seeking guarantees with respect to the
8 level of call activity?

9 A. Yes. They wanted specific numbers of specific
10 types of calls through the launch period.

11 Q. And what was Schering's reaction to that?

12 A. We felt we couldn't accommodate that level of
13 call activity and that type of call for them.

14 Q. Did you participate in any face-to-face
15 meetings with the people from Kos?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And where was -- where was that meeting or
18 where were those meetings?

19 A. The one meeting I participated face to face
20 with Kos was in Miami at the Kos corporate
21 headquarters.

22 Q. Who else attended, if anyone, on behalf of
23 Schering?

24 A. It was myself, it was my product manager, David
25 Grewcock, it was our manager of marketing research,

1 Toni DeMola, and it was our business development
2 director, Karin Gast.

3 Q. And who participated, if anyone, on behalf of
4 Kos?

5 A. My recollection was that Dan Bell, their COO
6 participated; David Heatherman, their vice president of
7 sales and marketing. They also had a project manager
8 for Niaspan, and I can't recall his name, and they had
9 a business development representative.

10 Q. If you could turn to SPX 112 in your binder,
11 please, do you have that, sir?

12 A. I do.

13 Q. There are some names there listed for Kos. Do
14 those names refresh your recollection as to the name of
15 the product manager?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Who was that?

18 A. Well, their product director was a gentleman
19 named John Kalimtsis.

20 Q. I would like for you now to turn to the pages
21 of this exhibit marked SP 002750, that's on the bottom
22 right-hand -- 2750. Do you see that?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. And just leafing through the rest of that
25 exhibit all the way to the end, do you recognize those

1 pages?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And what are these?

4 A. This is -- this is the presentation we made to
5 Kos during that meeting.

6 Q. So, are these copies of overheads that were
7 used at this --

8 A. Yes, these were overheads that we used during
9 the presentation with Kos regarding Niaspan.

10 Q. If you could turn to 2752, do you see that?

11 A. I do.

12 Q. It says there, "Strategic Fit Within CV
13 Franchise - Long Term Commitment to Lipid Reduction."

14 What is that a reference to?

15 A. Well, we were trying to demonstrate to Kos that
16 we had a long-term commitment to this therapy area,
17 that we were going to take it very seriously. We had
18 products in our pipeline that were coming that were a
19 natural fit. So, this was going to be an important
20 element of, you know, of our franchise, of our CV
21 franchise, short term and long term.

22 Q. Was ezetimibe one of the products in the
23 pipeline?

24 A. Yes, that was the primary product.

25 Q. And if you could turn to 2754, it's two more

1 pages in, do you have that?

2 A. I do.

3 Q. It says there, "Open Issues," and there's a
4 number of things listed there.

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. One of them is global option. Do you see that?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. What is that a reference to?

9 A. We had some early discussions about this being
10 potentially a worldwide deal. So, although I was
11 focusing on the U.S. opportunity, we didn't want to
12 overlook an opportunity that was ex-U.S. so, we still
13 were in the early phase of discussion regarding a
14 global option.

15 Q. Now, what happened at the meeting in Miami?

16 A. Well, I recall that we did a very successful
17 job in convincing the Kos folks that we would make a
18 good partner. We had a cogent story. We demonstrated
19 we knew the marketplace. We presented them with issues
20 that we felt we could most uniquely and effectively
21 address. We presented them with access to a field
22 force that we thought was tops in the industry,
23 particularly in this therapy area, cardiovascular
24 medicine. So, my take-away was that we had a very good
25 and successful meeting.

1 Q. And what happened next?

2 A. We committed to follow up with the folks from
3 Kos, and we would begin the process of putting together
4 broad-based deal terms.

5 Q. Did part of that process involve the
6 preparation of sales forecasts?

7 A. Yes. We were going to go back, internally
8 assess the value of the product to Schering-Plough, do
9 a number of sales forecasts under a number of
10 scenarios, and then from that establish broad-based
11 deal terms which we would ultimately present to Kos.

12 Q. If you could turn to the exhibit marked CX 550
13 in your binder, I'm going to put it on this thing just
14 briefly, but I have a better copy of it in here.

15 Is Exhibit CX 550 some of the sales forecasts
16 that Schering prepared?

17 A. Yeah, I had SP 2743 -- is that where --

18 Q. Yes, SP 2743.

19 A. Yes, yes.

20 Q. And if you could look on the next page and the
21 page after that, I believe there's some more forecasts.

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. What are the differences between these -- I
24 count -- well, there are three spreadsheets here. What
25 are the basic differences among them?

1 A. Well, the first forecast is -- it's called
2 Ray's Forecast - Base. This is my assessment as to the
3 base case potential for Niaspan, and in this base case,
4 I did a market assessment, I applied some overall
5 estimates of market penetration and market growth, and
6 then I applied two pricing scenarios to that product.
7 So, this was -- this is, in my view, the base case
8 forecast for the potential of the Niaspan product.

9 The second one is Toni's forecast, and that's
10 SP 002744, and that's, in effect, a downside estimate.
11 That would be what we felt might have been the lowest
12 potential of the product. It was done by marketing
13 research, who tend to be a little more conservative in
14 these things, but this was Toni DeMola, our manager of
15 marketing research, this was her estimate of the
16 downside forecast.

17 And the third estimate is my upside forecast.
18 What this demonstrates is what I thought might be the
19 upside potential for the product, assuming we would get
20 early, more aggressive market penetration and higher
21 market share. So, this is basically three sensitivity
22 analyses around the potential of the product.

23 Q. And which of these forecasts did you think was
24 most realistic?

25 A. I thought the base case was.

1 Q. And that's at 2743. Is that right?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Do you see there on your screen, is that a --
4 what I've tried to do is present to you a slightly more
5 legible copy of your base case. Does that appear to be
6 what this is?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And again, you can either look on this one or
9 the one in front of you, but are there two different
10 price scenarios in this spreadsheet?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And why are there two different price
13 scenarios?

14 A. Well, we used two pricing assumptions. One was
15 based on an existing product on the market, a niacin
16 sustained release product, which had a very low price,
17 and then we also priced it compared to I would call it
18 a somewhat like product called gemfibrozil, but it was
19 a generic gemfibrozil. So, we felt if this product
20 could deliver on the product profile that they assumed,
21 the price that we could achieve would be closer to that
22 higher price based on generic gemfibrozil versus the
23 current pricing of a product that was not widely used.

24 Q. And again, if you could just take us through
25 this spreadsheet and explain how you prepared it.

1 A. Sure. We start with the overall U.S.
2 population and we estimate through third-party data the
3 percentage of patients that are likely to be managed
4 with a prescription for lipid disorders. We look at
5 the total eligible patient population. We know
6 approximately how many of those patients are likely to
7 receive a prescription of any kind, and we assess what
8 we think we can do vis-a-vis the niacin market.

9 We also currently know the number of patients
10 that are currently receiving a niacin prescription, so
11 based on that information and based on our awareness of
12 the product profile, we make some estimates as to what
13 we believe we can do with adequate levels of sales and
14 promotion to expand that market and take a more
15 significant market share from the existing products and
16 other like therapies within that marketplace.

17 Q. Now, going again to your price scenarios, did
18 you have a view as to which of these would be more
19 realistic?

20 A. I thought the generic gemfibrozil price was the
21 most reasonable one.

22 Q. How did the price of generic gemfibrozil
23 compare with the price of other cholesterol-lowering
24 drugs, such as statins, do you recall?

25 A. Well, statins were just being, you know,

1 launched and having their heyday during that time, and
2 that was significantly less. Gemfibrozil was
3 significantly less.

4 Q. And how did you estimate the share assumptions
5 in this forecast?

6 A. I mean, part of it is our experience in growing
7 markets, our experience in developing markets. We felt
8 with the amount of effort we would put forward, our
9 expertise in sales and marketing, we felt we could --
10 we could achieve those market share and market
11 penetration assumptions. So, it's based on past
12 experience and awareness of the marketplace.

13 Q. So, as I understand it, your base case was what
14 you thought was the most realistic scenario?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Was that the most optimistic of the forecasts
17 that you did?

18 A. No, no.

19 Q. And as I understand it from your testimony,
20 it's the base case with price scenario II that you
21 thought was the most realistic. Is that right?

22 A. Yes, that's correct.

23 Q. Did this -- did this forecast reflect your best
24 business judgment at the time?

25 A. It did.

1 Q. It was your best estimate of what you thought
2 Schering could achieve?

3 A. Yes, it was.

4 Q. Was it connected in any way to any patent
5 litigation?

6 A. No.

7 Q. Were the negotiations with Kos, were they arm's
8 length negotiations?

9 A. Yes.

10 MR. SILBER: Objection, Your Honor, leading.

11 MS. SHORES: I'll withdraw it if you would
12 like, Your Honor.

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Restate the question, please.
14 I'll sustain the objection.

15 BY MS. SHORES:

16 Q. How would you characterize the negotiations
17 between Schering and Kos?

18 A. They were independent negotiations that we
19 carried on in the normal course of business.

20 Q. Now, again, focusing on what's on the screen
21 before you, that's a page from CX 550, there's some
22 sales figures highlighted across from the reference to
23 price scenario II. Do you see that?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And they reflect the amount of sales that you

1 anticipated Schering could achieve. Is that right?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. At the time, did you think that Schering could
4 achieve these sales if Schering had gone forward with
5 the co-promotion arrangement?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And what is the amount of sales that you were
8 projecting Schering could achieve in the year let's say
9 2000?

10 A. Approximately \$109 million.

11 Q. Okay, I'd like you to turn now to CX 554 in
12 your binder. I'm sorry, I meant to say CX 551. Do you
13 have that, sir?

14 A. I do.

15 Q. What is CX 551?

16 A. It's a financial analysis regarding Niaspan.
17 It's basically a net present value analysis that takes
18 a product profit and loss statement, estimates a profit
19 after tax, generates a cash flow from that, and then
20 discounts that cash flow to arrive at a net present
21 value.

22 Q. And you might have just told me this, but how
23 do you go about preparing a document like CX 551?

24 A. Well, the critical issue is you get the sales
25 right. So, you take your sales forecast, and then you

1 put in trailer costs. So, for example, you'll include
2 your cost of goods, the cost to manufacture your
3 product, then you'll include additional costs such as
4 marketing costs for promotion, for field selling, if
5 there are any royalties expected, if there are any cash
6 discounts you anticipate, so you include all of those
7 trailer costs into the P&L statement.

8 You apply your estimated corporate tax rate to
9 achieve a profit after tax, and then you make some
10 assumptions regarding inventory levels, and you come up
11 with a cash flow -- with a cash flow stream, and you
12 take that cash flow stream and you discount it to the
13 present based on usually internal hurdle rates, and I
14 believe 13 percent is the rate we used here, and you
15 come up with a net present value of the overall -- you
16 know, of the overall value of this product.

17 Q. I'm going to show you now on your screen there
18 a highlighted version of CX 551. Can you see that at
19 all?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Okay. What I've tried to do there is to
22 highlight -- and you can look at the one in your binder
23 if it's easier, but I've tried to highlight the sales
24 figures on CX 551. Can you see that?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. How do those sales figures relate to the sales
2 forecasts that were contained in the previous exhibit,
3 which was CX 550?

4 A. They're the same.

5 Q. And the first page of this document says, "RR -
6 Base Scenario 2."

7 What is that a reference to?

8 A. This is a look at the base scenario using the
9 gemfibrozil pricing.

10 Q. And RR, who is that?

11 A. I'm sorry, that's Ray Russo, that's me.

12 Q. Now, did there come a time when Schering made a
13 proposal to Kos?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. If you could turn to CX 554 in your binder, do
16 you have that?

17 A. I do.

18 Q. What is CX 554?

19 A. This is a first draft of proposal terms that we
20 submitted to Dave Heatherman, who was the vice
21 president of sales and marketing for Kos.

22 MS. SHORES: Just one second, Your Honor.

23 (Counsel conferring.)

24 MS. SHORES: Your Honor, I'm admonished that
25 this is an in camera document, so we will have to clear

1 the courtroom briefly, I'm afraid.

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. Are there going to be a
3 number of in camera-related questions?

4 MS. SHORES: No, there is not, no.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Will there be any more
6 reference to in camera in your direct examination?

7 MS. SHORES: I had intended to ask the witness
8 some questions about this particular exhibit.

9 JUDGE CHAPPELL: But only this?

10 MS. SHORES: Only this one.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Because where I was going was
12 if we could do it all in one place in your direct exam
13 if there was any more.

14 MS. SHORES: This is it, Your Honor.

15 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, I am going to have to
16 ask the public to leave the courtroom. We are getting
17 ready to consider an in camera document which is
18 excluded from the public's view. This testimony is not
19 subject to public hearing. You will be notified when
20 you can re-enter the courtroom. Thank you.

21 (The in camera testimony continued in Volume
22 14, Part 2, Pages 3588 through 3591, then resumed as
23 follows.)

24 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I suppose that is your
25 document, so you can handle it as you will.

1 MS. SHORES: It is. I'll get it --

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'm more concerned about
3 nonparties' documents.

4 You may proceed.

5 MS. SHORES: I really should have gotten the
6 Schering version of that document, it would have
7 helped. I'm sorry.

8 BY MS. SHORES:

9 Q. What was Kos' reaction to Schering's proposal?

10 A. It was not a favorable reaction. They felt
11 that we did not offer them a fair proposal.

12 Q. Were you surprised by that?

13 A. I was surprised.

14 Q. Did they indicate what they wanted in addition
15 to what Schering was offering?

16 A. They wanted significant guarantees regarding
17 the level of promotion and the level of field force
18 activity we were willing to commit, and they wanted
19 significant additional payments, generally up-front
20 and milestone payments. So, those were the two big
21 issues.

22 Q. Do you recall how large an up-front payment Kos
23 wanted?

24 A. I don't recall the exact amount, but I recall
25 Dave Heatherman telling me that he wanted a

1 Lipitor-like deal, and I knew that the Lipitor deal had
2 a very heavy early payment and very significant
3 milestones.

4 Q. Now, did Schering make another proposal after
5 Kos had that reaction to this proposal?

6 A. We did not.

7 Q. Why not?

8 A. It was very clear that we were not even close
9 in negotiating terms. It had become a little bit
10 contentious. We felt we could not bridge the gap, and
11 we felt it wasn't worth our time to continue those
12 negotiations.

13 Q. I'd like you to turn to CX 558 in your binder.

14 Actually, I will just withdraw that question,
15 and no further questions, Your Honor.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Cross?

17 MR. SILBER: Yes, Your Honor.

18 CROSS EXAMINATION

19 BY MR. SILBER:

20 Q. Hi, Mr. Russo, my name is Seth Silber. Good to
21 meet you.

22 A. Hi, Seth.

23 Q. I just wanted to start by first asking you a
24 couple of questions about K-Dur, and if we could look
25 at CX 17 in your binder, do you have that in front of

1 you?

2 A. I do.

3 Q. Okay. If you could turn back to SP 003946,
4 please, and at the top it says, "Future Competition."

5 Do you see that?

6 A. I do.

7 Q. Okay, the second paragraph says, "Although
8 generic entry is not likely until 1998, the impact of a
9 generic 20 mEq product would be significant, especially
10 for the sales subject to mandatory generic substitution
11 laws, Medicaid and managed care."

12 Do you see that?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And here, this is a document -- you testified
15 this is a marketing backgrounder?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Here, the statement is specific to the impact
18 of generics that are of the 20 mEq variety, correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Okay. This isn't talking about all the other
21 generics that are on the market for potassium chloride.

22 A. No.

23 Q. This is specific to just generic 20 mEq.

24 A. I believe so.

25 Q. And it says that it would be significant

1 especially for sales subject to mandatory generic
2 substitution laws, Medicaid and managed care, correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Now, the generic substitution laws, the only
5 generic that can be substituted for 20 mEq is a generic
6 20 mEq, correct?

7 A. An equivalently A-rated -- and I don't -- I'm
8 not a generic substitution law expert.

9 Q. Okay.

10 A. But my understanding is that they would have to
11 be, quote unquote, "A-rated."

12 Q. Okay. So, the only generics that can be
13 substituted for a 20 mEq -- for the K-Dur product that
14 is a 20 mEq is another generic that is a 20 mEq.

15 A. Unless the pharmacist contacted the physician
16 and basically said, can I substitute two 10s for a 20,
17 which often happened.

18 Q. Okay. And at this time, there were no other 20
19 mEq generics available.

20 A. Not that I was aware of.

21 Q. If you could turn to CX 18, please, and again,
22 this is the 1997 K-Dur marketing plan?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And I believe Ms. Shores was asking you some
25 questions about all the different potassium products

1 that are out there, correct? Do you recall that?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Okay. And I think you referred to it as an
4 undifferentiated market.

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And you said it was hard to differentiate your
7 K-Dur product from the others. Is that right?

8 A. We tried.

9 Q. Okay. If you could turn back to page SP
10 2300040, the fourth page of the document, it says
11 "Vision" at the top.

12 Do you see that?

13 A. I do.

14 Q. Okay. The first sentence says, "K-Dur remains
15 the only once-daily 20 mEq potassium replacement tablet
16 on the market."

17 Do you see that?

18 A. I do.

19 Q. So, it's the only once-daily 20 mEq.

20 A. That was our position. I mean, that was our
21 vision of it, yes. It's the only 20 mEq.

22 Q. Okay. So, that's a true statement, it's the
23 only 20 mEq.

24 A. At that time, yes.

25 Q. The only once-daily 20 mEq.

1 A. At that time, yes, um-hum.

2 Q. And that differentiates it from all these other
3 drugs on the market.

4 A. That was our position to brand that, yes, that
5 was what we were trying to do.

6 Q. That's how you marketed the drug.

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Okay. The next sentence says, "These features
9 combined with the versatility in dosing for K-Dur 20's
10 microencapsulation technology have helped our sales and
11 marketing team keep K-Dur 20 at the top of the
12 potassium market."

13 So, "these features" is referring back to the
14 once daily, correct?

15 A. No, we actually positioned this because we said
16 you could break it in half, you could swill it in
17 water, you could take it partially. So, we got, quote
18 unquote -- or you could sip it with a straw, we even
19 had cool little straws that allowed you to sip it with.
20 So, the flexibility in dosing, whether you had 20 mEq,
21 30 mEq, 40 mEq, was we thought -- we tried to establish
22 it as a distinguishing feature, yes.

23 Q. Okay. You used those features to distinguish
24 or differentiate your product from other products?

25 A. That was our intention.

1 Q. Now, you had also talked about there were price
2 constraints on your product. Is that correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Okay. Now, despite those price constraints,
5 did you generally raise the price of K-Dur 20 every
6 year?

7 A. I don't recall exactly how much, but we
8 generally tried to raise the price, yes.

9 Q. Okay. Do you recall if you raised the price
10 between 1995 and 1996?

11 A. I don't. We likely did.

12 Q. Okay. How about '96 to '97?

13 A. I don't recall exactly, but we likely did.

14 Q. '97 to '98?

15 A. I don't recall.

16 Q. Is it likely?

17 A. Likely.

18 Q. How about '99 to -- did I stop at '98? Okay,
19 how about '98 to '99?

20 A. Actually, I can't even comment on '97 and '98.
21 I don't think I had the product then.

22 Q. Okay, that's fair.

23 A. But for the couple -- two-three years, I think
24 we took an -- I think we took a price increase. And
25 actually, my recollection, it was smaller than some of

1 the other MI products.

2 Q. Okay, but for the years you can recall, you
3 increased the price of K-Dur 20, correct?

4 A. Yes. And K-Dur 10, too.

5 Q. Okay, thank you.

6 Let's turn to Niaspan. Now, towards the end of
7 your testimony, we heard you talk about some sales
8 forecasts that you had done while you were evaluating
9 Niaspan, correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And you had testified that there was one
12 certain set of sales projections that you felt were the
13 most accurate.

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Let me show you a demonstrative that Schering
16 used in their opening statement in the litigation with
17 certain sales figures, and just tell me -- are these
18 the same sales figures Ms. Shores took you through that
19 you said were the most accurate?

20 A. I believe that they are.

21 Q. Okay. If you like, we can turn back to I
22 believe it is CX 550 and you could check. I believe
23 that this is your base case price scenario II.

24 A. Let me just make sure I've got the right one.
25 Yes, they are the same.

1 Q. Okay. And Paula, if we could pull up CX 550,
2 please.

3 Okay, and if you could just focus in on the
4 left-hand column, which shows the assumptions that you
5 looked at --

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. I'm sorry, Paula, up under where it says,
8 "Ray's Niaspan Sales Forecast," the listing of about
9 eight or nine items down the left there. Yeah, those.
10 That's great.

11 Okay, and I think you already went through this
12 with Ms. Shores and you told us about how you did this
13 analysis.

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And it's a fairly detailed analysis, isn't it?

16 A. Yes, not inconsistent with similar analysis,
17 but yes.

18 Q. Is this generally how you do your sales
19 forecasts?

20 A. Generally.

21 Q. And this is how you do your sales forecasts
22 when you consider in-licensing a drug?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Okay. And in doing this sales forecast, you
25 looked at two different scenarios. Is that right?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And is that also something standard, to look at
3 multiple price scenarios?

4 A. I wouldn't characterize it as standard. It
5 depends on the nature of the product. If you have a
6 reference price, you have one, and you can use it. If
7 you don't, often times you can't establish an existing
8 product in the market, and so therefore you have to do
9 one of a number of things. You either have to do some
10 marketing research to assess it, you have to take a
11 good, you know, educated business guess, or you have to
12 find -- well, frankly, those are the two big things.
13 You have to, you know, use your best judgment to come
14 up with a price. In this case, we had some reference
15 prices that we used.

16 Q. Okay. In doing similar analyses before for
17 Schering, have you looked at multiple pricing
18 scenarios?

19 A. Yes, but I don't recall looking at them -- you
20 know, I looked at the generic gemfibrozil and the
21 Niaspan. I would normally just have one price,
22 generally, in the ones I had done.

23 Q. Okay. Paula, if you could pull up CX 1040.

24 MS. KATZ: Are you sure that's the number?

25 MR. SILBER: That doesn't look right to me. I

1 think I've got it in a binder. I apologize, Your
2 Honor.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Is that an exhibit?

4 MR. SILBER: Excuse me?

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Has that one been admitted
6 into evidence?

7 MR. SILBER: It's quite persuasive, isn't it?
8 I'm sorry, it's 1044, if you could just focus in on the
9 top part where the language is.

10 Your Honor, I apologize, I do not have an
11 additional copy. I can give my copy to respondents'
12 counsel.

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: If they want it, yes. I can
14 see it on the monitor.

15 MR. SILBER: Okay. If you would like to take a
16 look at it --

17 MS. SHORES: I'll just get it from our set.

18 MR. SILBER: Okay, thank you.

19 BY MR. SILBER:

20 Q. Mr. Russo, have you seen this document before?

21 A. I don't recall it.

22 Q. Okay.

23 MS. SHORES: Your Honor -- I'm sorry, Seth, but
24 I would ask that the witness be provided a whole
25 document if you are going to ask him questions about

1 it.

2 MR. SILBER: Surely.

3 May I approach, Your Honor?

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

5 BY MR. SILBER:

6 Q. Mr. Russo, have you had a chance to look at
7 this?

8 A. Briefly.

9 Q. Okay. And do you recognize the document?

10 A. I don't.

11 Q. Okay, let's look at the cover of it. It says
12 it's from Tom Lauda to Ray Kapur.

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. You're familiar with those individuals?

15 A. I am.

16 Q. And the date is June 17, 1997. Do you see
17 that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And the language on the cover sheet says,
20 "Please find attached the commercial assessment for
21 Niacin. If you have any questions, please contact
22 myself or Jim Audibert."

23 Do you see that?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Are you familiar with an evaluation Mr.

1 Audibert did for a drug called Niacor-SR?

2 A. I knew he was looking at that product, yes.

3 Q. Okay. Do you know whether he did sales
4 projections for that drug?

5 A. I believe he did.

6 Q. Okay. I'd like to show you the sales
7 projections in this document, if you could look back to
8 page SP 1600046.

9 Paula, if we could pull that up.

10 Do you see it says "Table I"?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And here -- and take your time looking at
13 this -- it represents that this is worldwide sales for
14 the cholesterol-lowering market. Do you see that?

15 A. It says ex-U.S., Mexico and Canada.

16 Q. Yes, I'm sorry, thank you.

17 And it's got sales listed for 1996 as \$4
18 billion?

19 A. Right.

20 Q. Okay. And then underneath it's got percent
21 change, do you see that?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And the number of sales for this worldwide
24 market, ex-U.S., Mexico and Canada, increases slightly
25 for each year by that percent change. Is that what you

1 believe this document is doing?

2 A. It shows a change for four years of 15 percent
3 and then a deceleration to 10 percent out to 2007.

4 Q. Okay. So, this page shows the worldwide
5 market, the sales for the cholesterol-lowering market,
6 correct?

7 A. Ex-U.S.

8 Q. Ex-U.S., absolutely.

9 Okay, now, the next page, you can look at it,
10 which is SP 1600047, it's labeled Table II, and it's
11 labeled Niacor-SR Sales. Do you see that?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And the sales for 1999 are \$45 million. Do you
14 see that?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Okay. And from looking at the last page, can
17 you tell where that figure was derived from? It says
18 the market share on Table II is 0.75 percent, and in
19 1999, there was \$6 billion in sales.

20 A. Well, if I'm doing my math right, it looks like
21 he took 0.75 times the \$4 billion. Is that right? Is
22 that what he's doing?

23 Q. Actually, I think that is correct, okay.

24 So, here, in this analysis, does it appear as
25 though someone is taking a worldwide ex-U.S. market and

1 coming up with sales projections just by multiplying
2 that market by some market share?

3 A. I didn't do this, so I don't know.

4 Q. I'm just asking if that's what it looks like to
5 you.

6 A. I'll accept your characterization of that. I
7 don't know.

8 Q. Okay. How does this analysis for Niacor-SR
9 compare with the way you did your sales forecast?

10 A. As I told you, I didn't do this sales forecast,
11 so I don't know.

12 Q. Can you looking at this -- were all the steps
13 that you did, were they present in this analysis for
14 Niacor-SR?

15 A. I can't tell, because I didn't do this
16 analysis.

17 Q. Okay. In this analysis, did the individual who
18 did it, did they determine the total patients eligible
19 for the drug?

20 A. I can't tell. They may have done that, and
21 they may have summarized it for senior management. I
22 can't tell.

23 Q. Okay.

24 A. I can't read their minds.

25 Q. You can't tell from this document?

1 A. I can't tell from this document.

2 Q. Okay. And you can't tell whether this
3 individual determined the number of patients receiving
4 therapy, as you had done for your analysis for Niaspan.

5 A. I can't tell.

6 Q. Okay. And you can't tell whether this
7 individual determined the number of patients receiving
8 niacin as you did in your analysis.

9 A. Again, having seen this now for the first time
10 and not having discussed this with whomever did this, I
11 couldn't tell what he did or she did.

12 Q. Okay. And you can't tell whether this
13 individual determined the number of patients receiving
14 the actual drug here, Niacor-SR, as you did in your
15 analysis for Niaspan.

16 A. I can't tell.

17 Q. Okay. And in doing your analysis for Niaspan,
18 there were six different sales projections, correct,
19 between what you had done and what Ms. DeMola had done.
20 Is that right?

21 A. I mean, there -- in my mind, there are three.
22 We basically looked at three scenarios, which we'll do
23 base case, some upside and -- I actually did two of the
24 three, so I did two of the three and the downside was
25 done by Toni.

1 Q. Okay, but those three sales forecasts were done
2 for two separate pricing scenarios.

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. So, you came up with six different sales
5 forecasts?

6 A. Yes. I came up with four.

7 Q. Okay. And in this exhibit, CX 1044, how many
8 sales forecasts are there?

9 A. Let's see, I see one on Table I and one on
10 Table II.

11 Q. Well, sales forecasts for the drug, not for the
12 market. It's only Table II that provides a single
13 sales force -- sales forecast. Is that correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Okay. Like Ms. Shores, we have also prepared a
16 slide to try to make your sales projection spreadsheet
17 a little easier to read.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. Paula, if you could bring that up.

20 I don't know, again, if this helps or not. We
21 all have the same problem with this document, but this
22 is CX 550. You can look at it in your binder or you
23 can look at it up there on the screen.

24 Now, it was your testimony that -- what we've
25 got here is titled Ray's Forecast - Base, Price

1 Scenario II, and this was in your testimony the most
2 reasonable?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Okay. And this was the same numbers that were
5 in this demonstrative that I had shown you earlier. Is
6 that right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Okay. Was there agreement among your
9 colleagues that this was the most realistic estimate of
10 sales projections?

11 A. Among my colleagues? I was the senior director
12 of marketing, so I got to have the final say. So, I --
13 I agree with it, Marty agreed with it, it was
14 included -- it was the one that was carried forward to
15 the important financial analysis. And remember, what
16 these are, this is -- these are spreadsheets. This is
17 Lotus spreadsheets. So, this is backup documents.
18 It's hard for me to tell from a backup document which
19 is basically the worksheet as to what went into a
20 document that I'm not familiar with, so I'm not clear
21 on that one.

22 Q. Okay. Now, you asked Ms. DeMola to do a set of
23 forecasts here, didn't you?

24 A. Well, Toni did it independently. I mean, she
25 often times will include her market research

1 assessment.

2 Q. Okay. And sometimes do you rely on this?

3 A. Sometimes we use them to, you know, determine
4 upside and downside potential, yes.

5 Q. Okay. And her forecasts were lower than yours;
6 they were the downside projections, correct?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. Okay. So, that's a separate set of projections
9 that were less than yours, correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Now, you also said you were her boss, so it
12 seems as though your numbers prevailed?

13 A. Well, I wasn't actually her boss.

14 Q. Okay.

15 A. But I was the expert in the cardiovascular
16 area. Toni was responsible for all therapy areas. So,
17 she was the head of marketing research; I was the head
18 of cardiovascular marketing.

19 Q. And did Mr. Driscoll -- who is Mr. Driscoll
20 again?

21 A. He was the vice president of sales and
22 marketing for Key Pharmaceuticals at that time.

23 Q. Is he your boss?

24 A. He is.

25 Q. Did he agree with your sales projections?

1 A. I believe he did.

2 Q. Let me show you some testimony from your
3 deposition.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Silber, how much more do
5 you have?

6 MR. SILBER: I would estimate 30 to 40 minutes,
7 so --

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. Is this a good time for
9 a break?

10 MR. SILBER: I will wrap up this section
11 dealing with sales forecasts probably within five
12 minutes, and then the rest is kind of a distinct
13 segment, so if I could proceed and finish this.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, let me know when it's
15 a -- when you finish this line of questioning, then.

16 MR. SILBER: I will, Your Honor, thank you.

17 BY MR. SILBER:

18 Q. Okay, let me show you this testimony from your
19 deposition at page 163, and if you want a copy of it, I
20 can provide that to you.

21 A. Okay.

22 Q. It says:

23 "ANSWER: Well, we discussed the whole
24 situation. I think Marty and I basically agreed but I
25 was, frankly, a little more bullish on the upside

1 potential and I wanted a product that was a
2 cardiovascular complement to future strategic
3 initiatives so I probably was a little bit more
4 positive than Marty."

5 So, there really wasn't complete agreement
6 between the two of you.

7 A. No, I think I said we had basic agreement.
8 Marty and I basically agreed.

9 Q. Okay. Do you know whether Mr. Driscoll had
10 ever stated on his own what he thought the sales
11 projections were for Niaspan?

12 A. I do not.

13 Q. Okay. Would you be surprised if he said that
14 he thought the maximum sales potential for this drug
15 was \$60 to \$70 million?

16 A. A little bit.

17 Q. Okay. Let me show you some testimony from Mr.
18 Driscoll's investigational hearing, which is just
19 another word for deposition.

20 A. Okay, okay.

21 Q. And here, the question to Mr. Driscoll is:

22 "QUESTION: When you were having the
23 discussions with Kos, did you ever come up with a
24 dollar figure you were projecting for the potential
25 sales of this product?

1 "ANSWER: For their product?

2 "QUESTION: Yes.

3 "ANSWER: Oh, yes.

4 "QUESTION: And what were your projections?

5 "ANSWER: Mine, my projections were that this
6 product based on the profile I had seen -- and again
7 based on the information available to me, we had not
8 gone go a heavy due diligence, had not been given the
9 benefit of broad information, but based on what was
10 available to me, my sense of that product and profile
11 was max 60 to \$70 million product one day."

12 So, in this testimony, is Mr. Driscoll saying
13 that the maximum sales potential for this drug is \$60
14 to \$70 million?

15 MS. SHORES: Your Honor, I object to that. I
16 think the testimony speaks for itself. If he wants to
17 ask him whether he agrees with it, that's one thing.
18 The transcript is on the screen.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: It's a fair question. I'll
20 overrule the objection. If the witness doesn't agree,
21 he can say no. If he is -- if you're right, Ms.
22 Shores, and he's misstating something, the witness can
23 take care of it.

24 THE WITNESS: Could you repeat --

25 MR. SILBER: Would you like the question read

1 back, please?

2 Susanne, if you can read it, please.

3 (The record was read as follows:)

4 "QUESTION: So, in this testimony, is Mr.
5 Driscoll saying that the maximum sales potential for
6 this drug is \$60 to \$70 million?"

7 THE WITNESS: It's not clear. I mean, here he
8 says based on what was available to me, my sense of the
9 product and the profile was max 60 to 70 million
10 product one day, and I don't understand what that
11 exactly means. I mean, is that one day sales, per
12 annum, total? I don't know.

13 BY MR. SILBER:

14 Q. Do you think Niaspan could have had one-day
15 sales of \$60 to \$70 million a day?

16 A. No, I don't.

17 Q. Okay. Do you think it's likely he's talking
18 about annual sales?

19 A. It's likely, but I don't know if he's talking
20 max early launch, max life of the product. It's hard
21 for me to assume what Marty was thinking.

22 Q. But he was saying something about the maximum
23 of \$60 to \$70 million annually for Niaspan.

24 A. If that's what he said, I think that's low.

25 Q. That's your opinion?

1 A. That's my opinion, yes.

2 Q. And Mr. Driscoll is your boss?

3 A. Mr. Driscoll is my boss, but I'm the head of
4 cardiovascular marketing.

5 Q. Who made the ultimate decision to discontinue
6 discussions with Kos about Niaspan?

7 A. I believe Rich Zahn did. He agreed that we
8 should no longer continue the discussion.

9 Q. Was that based upon a memo that Mr. Driscoll
10 had written to Mr. Zahn?

11 A. I believe so, and probably discussions with
12 Rich.

13 Q. Okay. So, Mr. Driscoll recommended to Mr. Zahn
14 to drop Niaspan?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. To drop discussions with Kos about Niaspan?

17 A. Yes, I believe so.

18 Q. So, that was his recommendation to his boss.

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Now, just assume with me for a moment --

21 A. May I make a clarification please?

22 Q. Sure.

23 A. And I'm not sure what Marty means here. Is
24 that the sales we would achieve as a company in a
25 co-promotion? Is that the total sales potential of the

1 product? So, it's not clear to me that we necessarily
2 disagree. If this is one-half of the sales potential
3 split between a co-promotion, our numbers are fairly
4 close. So, I don't know exactly what Marty meant in
5 this case.

6 Q. Okay. But if you take the \$60 to \$70 million
7 to be the full sales for Niaspan, this is lower than
8 your projection. Is that right?

9 A. If you take them to be the full sales.
10 Remember, we're looking at a co-promotion arrangement.

11 Q. Right.

12 A. Okay.

13 MR. SILBER: Your Honor, that's all I have for
14 this part, so if you would like to take a break, this
15 would be a good time.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, let's take our afternoon
17 break. We will be in recess until 4:20.

18 (A brief recess was taken.)

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Silber, you may proceed.

20 MR. SILBER: Thank you, Your Honor.

21 BY MR. SILBER:

22 Q. If we could go back to K-Dur for just a moment,
23 CX 17 in your binder, the marketing backgrounder.

24 Now, you had told us about substantial
25 promotional efforts that Schering had undertaken for

1 K-Dur. Do you recall that testimony?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And I believe you had said there was about \$20
4 million in promotional spending?

5 A. Approximately.

6 Q. If you could look at SP 003546, it's regular
7 page number 6 at the bottom, and about two-thirds of
8 the way down the page --

9 MS. SHORES: Excuse me, Seth, you said 3546?

10 MR. SILBER: Yes.

11 MS. SHORES: And you're in CX 17?

12 MR. SILBER: Sixteen.

13 MS. SHORES: I didn't use CX 16, so I don't
14 think the witness has it in front of him.

15 MR. SILBER: Okay, let me hand it to the
16 witness, then. Do you want to take a look at it first?

17 (Counsel conferring.)

18 BY MR. SILBER:

19 Q. Okay, I think it's the same document. I think
20 CX 16 and CX 17 are the same document.

21 A. I see it.

22 Q. And if you can look under Forecast. Paula, if
23 you could pull up that paragraph under Forecast.

24 Okay, in the last line it says, "The forecast
25 also assumes that there are no new product

1 introductions and K-DUR continues to receive minimal
2 detail and promotional support."

3 So, here, rather than saying you're having a
4 substantial promotional support, you're talking about
5 minimal detail and promotional support. Is that
6 correct?

7 A. Remember what this is. This is in preparation
8 of the marketing plan. So, what we do as good
9 marketers, we make our case to get additional spending
10 and additional field force support. So, this is
11 actually done before the approval of the marketing
12 budgets. So, what JoAnn was doing in this case was
13 basically giving a baseline forecast with no marketing
14 support. That was my understanding.

15 Q. But this was a document done for planning
16 purposes?

17 A. Yeah, before the marketing plan is put
18 together.

19 Q. And in this document it talks about minimal
20 detail and promotional support. Is that correct?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Let me show you another document, which is
23 CX 695, which I do not have another copy, a colleague
24 just gave it to me. Let me give it to Ms. Shores to
25 look at first.

1 Your Honor, if I may approach?

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may.

3 BY MR. SILBER:

4 Q. I just want to give you an opportunity to look
5 at the whole document to make sure that you know what
6 it is.

7 A. Sure.

8 Q. And I guess if you can tell me if you recognize
9 this document.

10 A. These are internal product margin reports.

11 Q. Okay. And you've seen this document --
12 document or documents of this type before?

13 A. I have.

14 Q. Okay. And I wanted to focus your attention on
15 the third page of the document, which is SP 020698,
16 okay? And what I wanted you to look at was the year to
17 date figures, which is four columns over as far as the
18 numbers, it's the fifth column of the document.

19 A. Right.

20 Q. Next to Total Selling -- I'm sorry, next to
21 Total Promotion, which is about two-thirds down the
22 page, there's a figure of \$5,134,000?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Do you see that?

25 A. I do.

1 Q. And that is the total promotion for the year
2 1997 for K-Dur?

3 A. I believe so. I believe -- I'm not sure, but
4 it looks like it. Generally they're captured this way,
5 yes.

6 Q. Okay. And three lines down is the Total
7 Selling figure, which is \$1,206,000. Is that correct?

8 A. That says it's field selling, yes.

9 Q. And that totals up to a little more than \$6
10 million?

11 A. Approximately, yes.

12 Q. Which is substantially less than the \$20
13 million figure that you had discussed with Ms. Shores?

14 A. I had all-in \$20 million. If you will see,
15 there's cash discount, freight, and I'm not sure that
16 this captures all third parties. I don't -- this is an
17 allocation that the finance folks do. I don't recall
18 when we brought on a third party to promote K-Dur, but
19 it looks less than my estimated figure, yes.

20 Q. Okay, you can set that aside. If you still
21 want to look at it, go ahead.

22 A. Yeah, because you picked one year, and there
23 are other years where the total promotion in '98, for
24 example, was almost \$7 million. So, there was a range
25 of between \$3 and it looks like \$8 million on

1 promotion, and field selling, this might have only
2 captured the field selling that was allocated from the
3 field force. It might not have captured third-party
4 costs. So, I'm not sure.

5 Q. But the year you discussed with Ms. Shores was
6 1997. Is that right?

7 A. That was a forecast for '97. That was our
8 recommendation to spend, yes.

9 Q. Okay, okay, thank you. All right, now we can
10 turn back to Niaspan.

11 A. Okay.

12 Q. If you could look in the binder you have to
13 CX 546, and Paula, if you could pull that up, please.

14 MS. SHORES: Excuse me, Seth, I don't know what
15 binder you have.

16 MR. SILBER: I'm using your binder. It's not
17 in your binder?

18 MS. SHORES: No.

19 MR. SILBER: Your Honor, may I approach?

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may.

21 MR. SILBER: Your Honor, would you like a
22 binder? We are going to be putting them up on the
23 screen.

24 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I don't need one if it's on
25 the screen, thank you.

1 BY MR. SILBER:

2 Q. Okay, do you have CX 546 in front of you, Mr.
3 Russo?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Okay. And did you prepare this memorandum?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Okay. It says next to the "From" line your
8 name?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And the subject is "Niaspan Opportunity"?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And the date is March 26th, 1997?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And you drafted this memorandum during your
15 participation in the evaluation of Niaspan for
16 Schering?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. If you go about halfway down the page below
19 where it says 1, 2, 3, there's a line that says, "For
20 this opportunity to be viable for SGP, a number of
21 issues must be resolved."

22 Do you see that?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. And SGP refers to Schering-Plough?

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. And it says that certain issues must be
2 resolved for the opportunity to be viable.

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Okay. And it then lists three separate items,
5 and if you look under the third item, it says, "Due
6 diligence validation of issues regarding," and those
7 are issues according to the language above that must be
8 resolved for the opportunity to be viable. Is that
9 correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And it says "Patent status" next to that. Do
12 you see that?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Why would this need to be resolved for Niaspan?

15 A. I mean, just as a -- you know, we would look at
16 that just to see if, in fact, their formulation patent
17 was reasonable. They had a -- niacin was not a
18 patentable drug, and so we probably would have looked
19 at their formulation patent. So, that makes sense.

20 Q. Okay. Was that ever resolved for Niaspan?

21 A. I don't believe we did. I don't believe we
22 went that far.

23 Q. Okay. The next is finalized labeling. Why
24 would that issue need to be resolved for Niaspan?

25 A. Well, recall that they had submitted

1 recommended labeling. So, before we would move
2 forward, we would want to see what the FDA had given
3 them back.

4 Q. Why would you want to see what the FDA had
5 given them back?

6 A. Just to see that what they had proposed is what
7 they had received.

8 Q. And was that ever resolved for Niaspan?

9 A. We discontinued the talks before they got
10 approval.

11 Q. What about the manufacturing capabilities, why
12 would that need to be resolved for Niaspan?

13 A. Well, for Niaspan, for this company, they had
14 never made a product before. So, they didn't have the
15 history of manufacturing. I'm not recalling where they
16 were going to make it. Sometimes we'll make these
17 products, but particularly a small company -- and
18 these -- you know, they vary based on the nature of the
19 company.

20 In this particular case, we wanted to make sure
21 that they could make it if, in fact, we were going to
22 move forward on that.

23 Q. And was that ever resolved for Niaspan?

24 A. I believe we knew their third party, so we
25 found out who their manufacturer was and were

1 comfortable with it.

2 Q. Okay. What about product liability, why would
3 that need to be resolved?

4 A. Well, again, this is a small company. They --
5 this is going to be their first product to market. So,
6 in case of a recall, we just wanted to make sure that,
7 in fact, they had enough coverage.

8 Q. And was that issue ever resolved for Niaspan?

9 A. We didn't get that far.

10 Q. Okay. So, of these four issues, you think
11 manufacturing capabilities may have been resolved?

12 A. I believe so.

13 Q. But the other three were never resolved.

14 A. We didn't -- we didn't move those forward, no.

15 Q. Okay.

16 A. On the patent status, I'm not sure if there was
17 a patent review, but again, not soon after this we
18 discontinued discussions, so there was no need to go
19 further on any of those or on the remainder of those.

20 Q. Okay. If you would look at the last paragraph
21 on the page, and Paula, if you could just pull that up.

22 It says, "These issues need to be reviewed and
23 more completely understood before a deal could be
24 made." And when it says "these issues," it's referring
25 to all these issues listed above, including patent

1 status, finalized labeling, manufacturing capabilities
2 and product liability, correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And you didn't resolve patent status, finalized
5 labeling, product liability, correct?

6 MS. SHORES: Objection, asked and answered,
7 Your Honor. He's asked the same question a number of
8 times.

9 MR. SILBER: It's probably accurate, Your
10 Honor. I'll move on.

11 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

12 MR. SILBER: I'll withdraw the question.

13 BY MR. SILBER:

14 Q. Per this statement, unless these issues were
15 reviewed, a deal could not be made, meaning that the
16 Niaspan deal could not be made.

17 A. I mean, I think I stated, unless they were
18 reviewed and better understood, we couldn't move
19 forward. So, we were in the process of trying to
20 understand them and in the process of offering broad
21 deal terms.

22 Q. Okay. And a little further down in that
23 paragraph it says, "We would of course subject any deal
24 to this criteria."

25 Do you see that?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. So -- and the criteria is everything we've
3 discussed above, the due diligence and validation
4 issues. Is that right?

5 A. That's probably not an accurate description.
6 I've done many deals that didn't subject the review to
7 those criteria, but that -- in this memo, it probably
8 considers those, yes.

9 Q. Okay. So, in this memo you state, "We would of
10 course subject any deal to this criteria."

11 A. Right.

12 Q. Okay. If we could go to CX 576 -- I'm sorry,
13 if you want to look at that document further, please go
14 ahead.

15 A. Okay.

16 Q. CX 576 is the next document, and I -- this is
17 the document from Decker Research Associates that I
18 believe Ms. Shores showed you or at least the cover
19 page on your direct. Do you recall that?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And the title for this is, "A Qualitative
22 Evaluation of the Opportunity for Niaspan in Multiple
23 Lipid Disorders, Telephone Interviews with Lipid
24 Specialists," and it's dated April 1997.

25 Do you see that?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Does that mean you received this report in
3 April 1997?

4 A. Yes, I believe so.

5 Q. Okay. This was part of the review you had done
6 on Niaspan?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And you had indicated you had spent a
9 significant sum of money on this document.

10 A. That was my belief, yes.

11 Q. Okay. So, you would consider this document to
12 be reliable?

13 A. I would.

14 Q. Okay. And this document was based upon I
15 believe you indicated interviews with ten
16 lipidologists?

17 A. We did two things. We had an advisory board
18 committee and then we did some telephone interviews.

19 Q. Okay. And that -- the ten interviews were with
20 lipidologists?

21 A. I'm going to take a closer look at this.

22 Q. Yeah, if you like, the second page of the
23 document, which is SP 020708, the paragraph there,
24 about two-thirds of the way down, says, "This report
25 presents findings from a series of ten one-on-one depth

1 interviews with lipid experts from Key's SCH 28235
2 Advisory Board."

3 A. Okay.

4 Q. So, that indicates that this was based upon
5 interviews with ten lipidologists from Schering's
6 advisory board?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And this was done in April 1997.

9 A. I don't recall if the advisory board was, but
10 the report was.

11 Q. Okay. And that was two months before Schering
12 licensed Niacor-SR?

13 A. I don't know.

14 Q. You don't know when Schering licensed
15 Niacor-SR?

16 A. I do not know.

17 Q. If you could turn to SP 020709, and Paula, if
18 you could pull up the second paragraph on that page.

19 A. I'm sorry, what's the reference?

20 Q. It's page number 2 of the document.

21 A. Okay.

22 Q. It says at the top, "Conclusions and
23 Recommendations."

24 A. I have it.

25 Q. The second paragraph, the first line says,

1 "Experts reported that the flushing patients experience
2 with immediate release niacin can be handled and that
3 they avoid use of sustained release preparations, which
4 cause less flushing, because of diminished efficacy and
5 concern regarding liver toxicity."

6 So, this statement indicates that these experts
7 avoid use of sustained release preparations. Is that
8 right?

9 A. The currently available ones, that's correct.
10 There were problems with them.

11 Q. Okay. And Niaspan was a sustained release
12 preparation?

13 A. But with a different delivery system. That's
14 what we were going for. Yes.

15 Q. Okay. And it says here that experts avoid
16 sustained release because of diminished efficacy.

17 A. Right, they would have to -- I don't believe
18 the current sustained release product had good clinical
19 trials, so again, they weren't getting good blood
20 levels, they didn't have good phase III efforts. So,
21 I -- they had a bad experience with the currently
22 available sustained release technology.

23 Remember, there are a lot of delivery systems,
24 and the amount of product that gets into your
25 bloodstream is basically dependent on the type of

1 delivery system. If it's a weak delivery system that
2 tends to dump the product in early, and I'm not -- I'm
3 not very familiar with that sustained release
4 technology or the one that they had used, it could have
5 serious problems, and they would likely avoid it.

6 Q. Okay. So, the experts were talking about those
7 problems in this statement?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Okay. And it says that these experts avoid
10 sustained release because of concerns regarding liver
11 toxicity. Is that right?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Okay. If you could turn forward two pages to
14 SP 20711, it's page 4 of the document, and Paula, if
15 you could pull up paragraph 9.

16 In the first line it says, "Physicians also
17 voiced numerous concerns and questions."

18 Do you see that?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And then it goes on to say, "They need
21 'compelling evidence' to support the safety and side
22 effect claims which 'go against our experience.'"

23 What safety and side effect claims are being
24 referred to here?

25 A. I mean, it's my sense that their current

1 experience with that weak sustained release product
2 that was available at the time was primarily the
3 flushing and liver toxicity.

4 Q. Okay. You keep talking about the current
5 product.

6 A. Right.

7 Q. What are you speaking to?

8 A. There was a product that was on the market that
9 they had experience with that was, quote unquote, a
10 "sustained release niacin."

11 Q. Okay, and these doctors are reporting upon
12 their experience with what was available in sustained
13 release?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And they're voicing their concerns and
16 questions about those products?

17 A. That's my understanding, yes.

18 Q. Okay. And then, based upon those concerns,
19 they say they need compelling evidence to support the
20 safety and side effect claims which go against our
21 experience.

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. Who at Schering would have been involved in
24 determining whether such compelling evidence existed
25 for Niaspan?

1 A. Myself, I mean likely Jim, someone in the
2 Schering-Plough Research Institute, likely Rick Veltri.
3 I mean, basically what they're looking for is clinical
4 data, clinical research data, standard, good,
5 well-controlled clinical trials, and that's -- in this
6 therapy area, in cardiovascular medicine, that's
7 compelling evidence.

8 Q. Okay. So, SPRI would have been involved in
9 evaluating it?

10 A. Likely. I mean, if there was no printed
11 third-party materials, we would have asked them for an
12 opinion, likely.

13 Q. Now, with regard to niacin, did you ever find
14 that there was compelling evidence to support the
15 safety and side effects claims?

16 A. Well, the Niaspan people believed that they had
17 overcome the side effect issues and that there was --
18 their one published paper that I believe demonstrated a
19 certain level of efficacy and I believe demonstrated
20 that they had ameliorated some of the side effects that
21 had been seen in the early sustained releases. So, I
22 believe they felt that they had.

23 Q. Okay, but the question was, did Schering feel
24 that there was compelling evidence to support the
25 safety and side effect claim for Niaspan?

1 A. I think we needed to see more of their clinical
2 data. We were -- you know, was it compelling, you
3 know, I can't say. Was there evidence that they were
4 working on that, yes, their clinical study demonstrated
5 that they had reduced the incidence of side effects.
6 So, that was reasonable. They had a good titration
7 pack, which is another standard way that cardiovascular
8 medicines tend to avoid, you know, overdosing. So,
9 there was reasonable evidence that they had worked in
10 the direction to minimize those side effects.

11 Q. When you concluded your evaluation of Niaspan
12 or when the Schering team concluded their evaluation,
13 did they conclude that there was sufficient evidence to
14 substantiate Kos' claims regarding flushing and liver
15 toxicity?

16 A. I think we were getting comfortable with that.
17 We -- that was not a show-stopper for us. If, in fact,
18 we could have gotten to better deal terms and a closer
19 arrangement on that, we would have worked with them,
20 and I think we could have resolved some of the side
21 effect issues, but that's my opinion. That's my sense
22 of it.

23 Q. Okay. Do you know what Mr. Driscoll's opinion
24 was on that?

25 A. I do not.

1 Q. Okay. Okay, let's turn back to -- forward in
2 the document to SP 020715, which is page 8 of the
3 document. Okay, the large paragraph in the middle,
4 Paula, if you could pull that up.

5 Okay, here the paragraph starts that, "Niacin
6 is relatively inexpensive and 'does all the right
7 things.' It lowers LDLs and triglycerides and raises
8 HDLs. It is effective as a first line therapy in
9 patients with only moderately elevated LDLs. Experts
10 stress that niacin is the best agent we have for
11 raising HDLs, rarely a primary problem; one physician
12 indicated that niacin is unique in its effect on
13 apoprotein A.

14 So, these are some of the potential benefits of
15 the drug, right?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Now, the next sentence says, "There are
18 numerous negatives offsetting these recognized
19 benefits."

20 Do you see that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And it lists among these negatives a very high
23 incidence of flushing at initiation of therapy, complex
24 titration requirements which place demands on physician
25 and patient, contraindications in diabetics and

1 patients with gout, varying bioavailability from
2 manufacturer to manufacturer, liver toxicity,
3 especially with the sustained release preparations.

4 Are these all negatives that you are aware of?

5 A. By and large, yes, um-hum.

6 Q. And these are the negatives that your panel of
7 lipidologists is pointing out to Schering in the study
8 you commissioned?

9 A. They are pointing it out for niacins in
10 general, yes.

11 Q. Were these problems with Niaspan?

12 A. With -- this is what we needed to hear. This
13 is what we wanted to hope to overcome, because if you
14 look there, this is the very issue. Varying
15 bioavailability from manufacturer to manufacturer;
16 complex titration requirements, they were trying to
17 overcome that; liver toxicity, they were overcoming
18 that, especially with the sustained release
19 preparations. So, we were trying to see what the
20 current perception was and if, in fact, Niaspan could
21 overcome them, and the positioning that Kos had was
22 that if they could, that was a valuable product.

23 Q. The last sentence of this paragraph says,
24 "Physicians pointed out that niacin and, particularly,
25 sustained release niacin, has such a bad reputation

1 among primary care physicians that successful marketing
2 of Niaspan will require compelling data and strong
3 support from lipid specialists."

4 So, here they're talking about to successfully
5 market Niaspan, you need to overcome all these things.
6 Is that right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And did you present the clinical data that you
9 had on Niaspan to these lipidologists?

10 A. I don't recall if we presented the Niaspan
11 clinical study. I think we presented the one paper
12 that we had available is my recollection, but I'm not
13 sure.

14 Q. And that one paper was the same data that you
15 were reviewing internally?

16 A. Right.

17 Q. Okay, let's turn to page 10 of this document,
18 which is SP 020717. Okay, and the bottom paragraph,
19 Paula, if you could pull that up.

20 It says, "Because of niacin's history and,
21 especially, the safety issue with sustained release
22 niacin, Niaspan trial data will be scrutinized very
23 carefully. Based on the one study we could show
24 them --" does that clarify whether you provided them
25 clinical data?

1 A. Yeah, it was likely we showed the published
2 clinical data.

3 Q. And this was the same data that you were
4 reviewing internally?

5 A. I believe so.

6 Q. And it goes on to say, "the lipid experts
7 identified Niaspan as a promising agent, possibly a
8 truly superior niacin, but they remained unconvinced on
9 the issues of liver toxicity, especially in combination
10 with a statin, and side effects (flushing and nausea)."

11 So, based upon their review of this data, the
12 same data you had, they remained unconvinced on the
13 issue of liver toxicity and side effects.

14 A. That's correct. What's interesting is there is
15 now a niacin-statin combination. So, we got the
16 compelling data, so -- we were aware that the current
17 dumping -- there was a sustained release product out
18 there that would just dose-dump, and it was very
19 problematic, and they had a bad flavor in their mouth.
20 So, these were the guys we would have had to convince,
21 and frankly, it was part of the reason we wanted to see
22 the rest of the NDA filing for Niaspan, because if
23 there was additional data that would support this
24 positioning, or importantly, if we saw the final
25 labeling and it wasn't contraindicated in some of these

1 issues or the side effect profile was better
2 characterized, we thought we had a very good product.

3 Q. Now, what you're talking about, a combination
4 of niacin and statin, that's data available in the year
5 2000.

6 A. Yeah, that's a recent product.

7 Q. Certainly data not available in June of 1997.

8 A. Well, actually, there were studies that went
9 back combining the two products that showed that there
10 was at lower levels some opportunity for this
11 combination, but it was not in a fixed-dose
12 combination. There were separate additive compounds.

13 Q. Okay, but these lipidologists that you had
14 retained here would have been familiar with that.

15 A. They would have -- they often used combined
16 therapy, so they would have known that, yes.

17 Q. So, even knowing that, they said that they
18 remained unconvinced on the issue of liver toxicity,
19 especially in combination with a statin, and side
20 effects, such as flushing and nausea.

21 A. Right, I think we were waiting to see the
22 package insert.

23 Q. Okay, and this was their statement in April of
24 1997 based upon the information you had provided and
25 what they knew about sustained release niacin drugs.

1 A. Yeah, their experience, not this product, but
2 their experience, yes.

3 Q. And this was just two months before Schering
4 paid \$60 million for Niacor-SR.

5 A. I don't -- I don't know that.

6 Q. Okay, if you could turn to CX 1047, and this is
7 another document that Ms. Shores showed you during your
8 direct. Do you recall that?

9 A. Let's see, is this the contact that -- the
10 visit? Yes.

11 Q. Okay. And this document is a contact report
12 about your visit to Kos in Miami in April 1997.

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And you participated in this meeting along with
15 Toni DeMola, Karin Gast and Dave Grewcock. Is that
16 correct?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Let me turn to the third page of this document,
19 which is SP 002748, and Paula, if you could pull up the
20 paragraph under Global Options.

21 Okay, do you recall discussions about a global
22 option?

23 A. Yeah, we had some general discussions as to if
24 this was a worldwide opportunity.

25 Q. Okay. And here, it says, "We suggested that,

1 since time is of the essence in the U.S., we
2 concentrate on this territory first and leave ex-U.S.
3 discussions for later."

4 Is that right?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. So, that was Schering's discussion, to focus on
7 the U.S. and not discuss licensing ex-U.S.?

8 A. Right, because there were -- they had a pending
9 approval, and if the negotiations were to go on
10 further, we didn't want to tie the two up. They had a
11 pending approval within months was my -- was my
12 recollection at the time.

13 Q. Okay. This goes on to say, "Bell did not have
14 a problem with this," and if you could just remind us
15 who Bell is.

16 A. That's Dan Bell. I believe he's the COO of Kos
17 at the time.

18 Q. And then it says, "He realizes that the market
19 potential in Europe (and probably also in Japan) is
20 quite limited."

21 Do you recall him saying that?

22 A. I do not.

23 Q. But it's stated in a summary of this memo that
24 was prepared by a Schering employee?

25 A. That's what's stated here.

1 Q. Okay. And he's speaking to Europe and Japan as
2 having limited market potential.

3 A. I'm not sure. I mean, it could have been the
4 ability to get it approved, the time line, the
5 investment. So, I'm not sure what he's referring to
6 there.

7 Q. Do you know what territories the license for
8 Niacor-SR covered?

9 A. I do not.

10 Q. Well, you know it's not the United States,
11 don't you?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And why is that?

14 A. Because I would have known that and it would
15 have fallen into my area of responsibility.

16 Q. Okay. So, is it likely the license would have
17 covered Europe?

18 A. It could have covered anything ex-U.S.

19 Q. Which includes Europe?

20 A. Europe, Canada, Mexico, the Far East.

21 Q. Okay. And those are the same markets, the Far
22 East and Europe, that Bell said the market potential
23 was quite limited for.

24 A. Again, I don't know if he was talking about
25 this product's market potential or their ability to

1 commercialize it or their infrastructure there.
2 Remember, I -- we were doing this as a domestic deal,
3 so I had a very vested self-interest to get this deal
4 done for U.S. only. So, his opining on ex-global
5 issues, you know, was of no real concern for me in this
6 particular discussion, and if we had a chance to come
7 back later and get the global option and it was -- and
8 we assessed the value, that would have been all the
9 better.

10 Q. Jim Audibert wasn't at this meeting, was he?

11 A. He was not.

12 Q. Was he involved in the Niaspan discussions at
13 this point?

14 A. I had included Jim. I mean, remember, Jim has
15 also got responsibility for strategic direction for the
16 cardiovascular products, you know, worldwide and
17 consistently, and he knew some of the players here.
18 So, we had discussions on it.

19 Q. Did he participate in any of the meetings from
20 April through June with Kos?

21 A. I recall he was on one telephone conference,
22 but I don't recall if he -- with Kos, that's the only
23 one I recall.

24 Q. So, you only recall him participating in one
25 phone call?

1 A. I recall the conference that we had, the big
2 initial conference with Bell and Dave Heatherman, and
3 Jim and I participated on that together.

4 Q. When did that take place?

5 A. And he was also -- ah, I don't recall, but we
6 covered it earlier.

7 Q. Yeah, I think I can point you to that document.
8 I believe it's CX 543. Just tell me if this is the
9 call you remember Jim participating in.

10 A. Yes, yes.

11 Q. Okay. And do you recall him participating in
12 any later conference calls with Kos?

13 A. I don't believe we had any later conference
14 calls with Kos.

15 Q. Okay. And do you recall him participating in
16 any face-to-face meetings with Kos?

17 A. I think in total we had one face-to-face
18 meeting.

19 Q. And he didn't participate in that?

20 A. So, no. No.

21 Q. Okay. If you could turn to CX 558, do you have
22 that in front of you?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. Okay. And the date on this document is June 9,
25 1997. Is that right?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And you were copied on this document.

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And this is a letter from Martin Driscoll?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And that's your boss?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And it's to Richard Zahn, right?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And that's his boss?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And the subject is Kos' Niaspan.

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And another individual is copied on this, David
15 Poorvin.

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Who is he?

18 A. I believe at the time he was the vice president
19 of business development, Karin Gast's boss.

20 Q. Okay. So, he's the head of all in-licensing
21 for pharmaceuticals at Schering?

22 A. He is -- I believe so. He's in global
23 marketing, but he's the head of that business
24 development group. At the time, we also had a business
25 development group in the U.S. that was parallel to his

1 group. I believe we had a parallel group, but he's --
2 he's the head of global business development.

3 Q. Okay. Mr. Audibert's not listed on this
4 document, is he?

5 A. He is not.

6 Q. The first paragraph says, "As you know, we have
7 held discussions with Kos regarding the potential
8 co-promotion of Niaspan (sustained-release niacin) with
9 Key Pharmaceuticals. We have worked hard to assess the
10 potential market value of Niaspan, understand the needs
11 of Kos, and create a potential deal that would yield
12 optimal revenue for Schering-Plough. After an
13 extensive assessment, I recommend we discontinue these
14 discussions."

15 So, is this the document where Mr. Driscoll
16 recommended to Mr. Zahn to discontinue discussions with
17 Kos?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Okay. And as far as you know, did any
20 discussions take place subsequent to this?

21 A. Not that I know of.

22 Q. Okay. Paula, if you could pull up the third
23 paragraph, please.

24 The first line says, "Although certain
25 investment firms have publicly stated that Niaspan is a

1 \$250 million product, we don't necessarily share that
2 view."

3 Here, Mr. Driscoll is saying that Schering
4 doesn't share the view of certain investment firms that
5 Niaspan is a \$250 million product. Is that correct?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And then it says, "Niacin has been available
8 for many years in the U.S. to lower cholesterol values.
9 The immediate-release niacin products cause flushing in
10 most patients. As a result, patient compliance is
11 greatly impacted. Also, the long-term use of the
12 immediate-release niacin can lead to hepatotoxicity."

13 Do you see that?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And this talks about just some of the known
16 side effects relating to niacin drugs. Is that right?

17 A. The immediate release niacins, yes.

18 Q. Okay. It goes on to say, "Kos maintains that
19 the intensity of flushing with Niaspan is much less
20 than seen with the immediate-release niacin products.
21 Kos also contends that the incidence of hepatotoxicity
22 with long-term use is greatly diminished with Niaspan."

23 Now, this is referring to what you talked about
24 before, that Kos had certain claims that you were
25 trying to determine whether or not they were -- they

1 could be substantiated. Is that right?

2 A. Right, yes, um-hum.

3 Q. And Mr. Driscoll goes on to say,
4 "Unfortunately, Kos has been unwilling to share the
5 clinical data that would substantiate these claims even
6 though we have a confidentiality agreement in place
7 between the two parties and we have repeatedly asked
8 for this information."

9 So, according to Mr. Driscoll here, Schering
10 can't substantiate these claims.

11 A. That's correct.

12 Q. And "these claims" refers to claims regarding
13 hepatotoxicity and intensity of flushing. Is that
14 right?

15 A. Right, they characterized that they had reduced
16 side effects in those two issues, and basically when we
17 got to negotiating broad deal terms, their ease in
18 which they provided us with data discontinued, because
19 I -- frankly, they felt that we weren't progressing in
20 our deal terms, and so they no longer were cooperative
21 in providing us with information, which happens a lot
22 in business development deals. I mean, if you're not
23 going to -- if you're no longer going to discuss this,
24 they're likely not to communicate information, whether
25 you have a confidentiality arrangement or not. It

1 can -- it can often -- if you know some of their data
2 and you're in the middle of negotiations, it can
3 strengthen your position in those negotiations and
4 possibly give you more leverage with the deal. So,
5 it's not unusual during the course of negotiations that
6 they may slowly give you some information until they
7 have a sense as to how serious you are vis-a-vis their
8 deal terms. So, that's not unusual.

9 Q. So, you didn't get enough information to
10 substantiate their claims.

11 A. I mean, Marty didn't. I mean, I was beginning
12 to get comfortable with this drug.

13 Q. Okay, but Marty's your boss, again?

14 A. Yes, yes.

15 Q. And this is Marty's view as of June 9, 1997,
16 that he can't substantiate Kos' claims as to their
17 sustained release niacin product for flushing and liver
18 toxicity.

19 A. Right, that's correct.

20 Q. If you could turn to the next page of the
21 document, and Paula, if you could pull up the first
22 paragraph.

23 Okay, this paragraph starts, "An important
24 factor that will impact the acceptance of Niaspan in
25 the marketplace are the current market dynamics of the

1 'statin' category. As you know, Warner-Lambert's
2 Lipitor (atorvastatin), supported by the co-promotional
3 efforts of Pfizer, is off to a torrid start. Prior to
4 the introduction of Lipitor, Niaspan's opportunity may
5 have resided as an adjunctive therapy with the statin
6 products. It appears that the 'potency of Lipitor'
7 combined with its seemingly benign side-effect profile
8 greatly reduces the need for a product such as
9 Niaspan."

10 So, here Mr. Driscoll is saying that the market
11 opportunity for a drug like Niaspan -- I'm sorry, that
12 because of the statins, the need for a product such as
13 Niaspan is reduced. Is that right?

14 A. That's his statement, yes.

15 Q. And again, he's your boss.

16 A. Right. I don't necessarily agree with that,
17 but that's happened before.

18 Q. Okay. It goes on to say, "Niaspan could be
19 relegated to the severe hypercholesterolemic patient
20 who needs a multiple drug regimen. As a result,
21 Niaspan's market opportunity is narrowing even prior to
22 its introduction. Indeed, the use of other classes of
23 cholesterol-lowering products such as niacin,
24 gemfibrozil and cholestyramine has declined since the
25 introduction of Lipitor."

1 So, here, Mr. Driscoll, your boss, is
2 indicating that the market opportunity for a drug like
3 Niaspan, a sustained release niacin drug, is narrowing
4 even prior to its introduction.

5 A. That's correct. He misread this market.

6 Q. He misread this market?

7 A. I think he did. I absolutely do. I mean, if
8 you look at -- back in time, that was a -- whatever, \$5
9 to \$6 billion marketplace. What Lipitor did was it
10 expanded the entire market, almost doubling it. So,
11 what's now happening is multiple meds are applied to
12 this therapy area, and frankly, an outstanding niacin
13 would have been a perfect product.

14 Additionally, we found out more about HDL over
15 that course of time, and it became a significant
16 contributor to the management of hypercholesterolemia,
17 like we thought it might be. So, everyone was afraid
18 of what Lipitor might do. It had just been launched.
19 We didn't know -- we didn't know the type of
20 investment. So, I think in Marty's mind, he didn't
21 want to have to take the risk that there were factors
22 that might challenge it. In my mind, I thought this
23 would be a very nice, significant product for us and
24 bridge us to our next product.

25 Q. Okay, but once again, I know I've said this a

1 few times, Mr. Driscoll is your boss.

2 A. Right, but again -- go ahead.

3 Q. And Mr. Driscoll recommended to his boss, Mr.
4 Zahn, to discontinue discussions with Kos on Niaspan.

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. And Mr. Zahn accepted Mr. Driscoll's opinion.

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. And discontinued discussions.

9 A. That's right.

10 Q. So, this ended the discussions on Niaspan.

11 A. It did.

12 Q. And this memo is dated June 9th, 1997.

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And that was just three days before Mr.

15 Audibert began his evaluation of Niacor-SR?

16 A. I don't know that.

17 MR. SILBER: That's all I have, Your Honor.

18 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Redirect?

19 MR. SILBER: Actually, I spoke too soon, if I
20 could have a moment, Your Honor?

21 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may.

22 MR. SILBER: Thank you.

23 (Counsel conferring.)

24 MR. SILBER: That's all I have, Your Honor.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Redirect, Ms. Shores?

1 MS. SHORES: Yes, Your Honor.

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Take your time, get those
3 binders organized before we start.

4 MS. SHORES: I am a fluid machine, Your Honor.

5 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

6 BY MS. SHORES:

7 Q. Mr. Russo, do you recall Mr. Silber asking you
8 about price constraints?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And I think you said that Schering likely
11 raised prices in 1996. Is that right?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. '97 and 1998?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. How much did Schering raise prices of K-Dur by
16 in that time frame, do you know?

17 A. I don't exactly recall, but it was likely in
18 the 3 to 5 percent range.

19 Q. Would you characterize that as a large increase
20 or a small increase?

21 A. No, that was standard. That was the rate of
22 inflation basically.

23 Q. And did the existence of all of these other
24 competitors to K-Dur constrain how much you could raise
25 your price during that time frame?

1 A. I think so. I mean, it -- if we were truly a
2 unique product, I would have tried to -- or had new
3 data, new clinical data, I would have been more
4 aggressive in raising the price.

5 Q. Do you know whether the prices of your
6 competitors' products also went up during that time
7 frame?

8 A. They likely did.

9 Q. Okay, I'm not that fluid. Hang on just a sec.
10 Now, Mr. Silber showed you some testimony from
11 Mr. Driscoll. Do you recall that?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And he showed you a portion of Mr. Driscoll's
14 testimony, and he suggested that it said that -- or
15 this might have been your prior testimony -- at any
16 rate, that you were more bullish than Mr. Driscoll on
17 the prospects for Niaspan. Do you recall that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And he also showed you some testimony of Mr.
20 Driscoll that Mr. Silber suggested meant that Mr.
21 Driscoll thought that Niaspan had a maximum \$60 to \$70
22 million potential. Do you recall that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. I'd like to show you CX 558. That should be in
25 both binders.

1 A. CX 558?

2 Q. 558.

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. That's the memorandum that Mr. Silber was
5 asking you about from Mr. Driscoll to Mr. Zahn. Is
6 that right?

7 A. That's correct.

8 Q. It says here in the second paragraph, "We
9 estimate peak year sales for Niaspan will be \$134
10 million in the year 2002."

11 Do you see that?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. How does that number, \$134 million in the year
14 2002, compare to your sales projections for Niaspan?

15 A. Very close.

16 Q. And if you would just go back to CX 550 in your
17 binder, do you have that? Just one second, I'll bring
18 it up on this screen. Hang on a second.

19 A. I do.

20 Q. Would you go back to 550?

21 A. I think that was it.

22 Q. And do you see there, sir, under Price Scenario
23 II, do you see that line?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. It's hard to read. If you could look and

1 see -- in fact, it might be helpful if you could just
2 read, and you can use either the exhibit in your binder
3 or the one on the screen, what the sales figures are
4 for each year up to 2002.

5 A. I'll give it my best shot. Approximately \$7
6 million, approximately \$48 million, approximately \$102
7 million, approximately \$107 million, approximately \$130
8 million, and approximately \$134 million, and that's
9 through 2002.

10 Q. And I think actually earlier when I was asking
11 you questions, you might have misread the figure under
12 2000. I believe that might say \$106,941,000. Is that
13 correct?

14 A. Yes, yes.

15 Q. So, going back here to CX 554, Mr. Driscoll's
16 memo to Mr. Zahn, how does his projection for the year
17 2002 compare to your projection?

18 A. He basically used my base case forecast for
19 year 2002.

20 Q. Now, again, in this -- in CX 558, which is the
21 memo from Mr. Driscoll to Mr. Zahn, it says, "Under the
22 assumption that we could negotiate terms as favorable
23 as a 50/50 split on gross profits, our revenue would
24 only equal \$67 million in the peak year and the 10 year
25 NPV is projected at \$127 million."

1 Do you see that?

2 A. I do.

3 Q. First of all, do you have an understanding as
4 to how he arrived at the figure of \$67 million?

5 A. I believe it's simply one-half of the 134.

6 Q. So, that would be Schering's share of the
7 profits?

8 A. Of the revenue.

9 Q. Of the revenue, thank you.

10 And how does the ten-year NPV in Mr. Driscoll's
11 memo compare with your NPV, net present value figures,
12 in your projections, do you recall?

13 A. Yeah, it's actually slightly higher.

14 Q. I'd like you to turn to -- and this is in the
15 binder that Mr. Silber gave you, CX 546. Do you have
16 that, sir?

17 A. I do.

18 Q. And again, what is CX 546?

19 A. This is a description of the Niaspan
20 opportunity, a memo written to myself, copied to
21 members of the team that was looking -- that were
22 looking at this product.

23 Q. I'll just put it on the ELMO.

24 Mr. Silber asked you some questions about these
25 items next to what's called due diligence validation.

1 Do you recall that?

2 A. I do.

3 Q. And the issues listed there are patent status,
4 finalized labeling, manufacturing capabilities and
5 product liability. Do you see that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And then Mr. Silber read you the following
8 sentence at the end of that page that says, "We would
9 of course subject any deal to that criteria."

10 Do you recall him asking you that?

11 A. I do.

12 Q. Mr. Russo, you wrote this document, did you
13 not?

14 A. I did.

15 Q. By "any deal" there, did you mean any deal at
16 Schering or for any product is subject to these
17 criteria?

18 A. Yeah, that would -- that's a broad
19 interpretation of that. I was just -- I would say no.

20 Q. Is it likely that you meant, sir, that Schering
21 would, of course, subject any deal involving Niaspan to
22 this criteria?

23 A. That was likely what I meant.

24 Q. And finally, if you could turn to CX 576, do
25 you have that, sir?

1 A. I do.

2 Q. That's the -- again the Decker Research study?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Third-party market research.

5 If you could turn to page 4 of this document,
6 do you see that, sir?

7 A. I do.

8 Q. It says there that, "Although the single study
9 did not sell them on Niaspan, lipid experts indicated
10 that they would welcome an effective, safe,
11 FDA-approved sustained-release niacin."

12 Do you see that?

13 A. I do.

14 Q. Was that your recollection of what these lipid
15 experts said about a sustained release niacin product?

16 A. It was. If they found a good niacin, they
17 would use a lot of it.

18 MS. SHORES: Thank you. I have nothing
19 further, Your Honor.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Any recross?

21 MR. SILBER: Yes, Your Honor.

22 RECROSS EXAMINATION

23 BY MR. SILBER:

24 Q. If you could just stay at that page, please.

25 The language Ms. Shores just read to you from

1 paragraph 8 in CX 576 says that lipid experts indicated
2 that they would welcome a safe -- an effective, safe,
3 FDA-approved sustained release niacin, right?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Did these lipid experts conclude that Niaspan
6 was a safe product?

7 A. I don't recall. It's -- it seemed like they
8 were liking it. It said they liked the dosing, the
9 efficacy and the safety is essentially equal to
10 immediate release niacin, less flushing than immediate
11 release niacin, and the fact that the patients would
12 receive a consistent product from prescription to
13 prescription. So, it sounds like to me, you know, if
14 they saw final labeling and were able to see clinical
15 data that was included in the NDA, they were going to
16 be supportive of Niaspan.

17 Q. Okay. But here it's just talking generally
18 about they would welcome this drug if it was effective,
19 if it was safe, if it was FDA approved.

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. We all would welcome a drug that's safe,
22 effective and FDA approved, wouldn't we?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Now, let's go back to page 10 of this document,
25 which is SP 020717, and at the bottom -- let me just

1 put this up on the ELMO.

2 This is a paragraph I had shown you before, and
3 in it, here we're talking about Niaspan, we're not just
4 talking about some hypothetical safe, effective,
5 FDA-approved drug, right?

6 A. It looks that way, yes, uh-huh.

7 Q. Okay. And they say that they remain
8 unconvinced on the issues of liver toxicity, especially
9 in combination with a statin, and side effects, and
10 those are safety issues, aren't they?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. So, they remain unconvinced on the safety
13 issues for this specific drug.

14 A. Based on the one study we showed them.

15 Q. Okay.

16 That's all I have, Your Honor.

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Anything further?

18 MS. SHORES: Nothing further, Your Honor.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you, Mr. Russo. You're
20 excused.

21 THE WITNESS: You're welcome.

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Who's your next witness, Mr.
23 Nields?

24 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, the next witness is
25 Mr. Hoffman. Mr. Orlans will be cross examining him.

1 Mr. Orlans is not available tomorrow, and we had sort
2 of agreed that we would request -- suggest to the Court
3 that it would be good either to do him all today or do
4 him all Friday, direct and cross.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: What's your estimated time for
6 direct?

7 MR. ORLANS: I think about 20 minutes.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Estimated cross?

9 MR. ORLANS: About a half hour, Your Honor.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: What's your plan B if we put
11 him off until --

12 MR. NIELDS: Call him on Friday, Your Honor.

13 MR. ORLANS: I think, Your Honor, I'm agnostic
14 on that point. We could do either. I don't know how
15 Mr. Nields feels about it, but either is fine with me.

16 MR. CURRAN: Your Honor, I have a slight
17 preference that it go today, because we've got a
18 witness on Friday who is available only on Friday, and
19 he might take the full morning until 2:30.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Right, we're breaking Friday
21 no later than 2:45 for another hearing I have to attend
22 to. Let's press on, but I would encourage the
23 attorneys in the case to make sure that I'm not the
24 last one to find out these scheduling concerns. It
25 would have been better to let me know earlier in the

1 day or as soon as this became knowledgeable to
2 everyone, but let's go ahead. Let's proceed.

3 MR. NIELDS: Thank you. I apologize for that,
4 Your Honor. I had actually anticipated Mr. Russo would
5 be done a little bit earlier and it wouldn't be an
6 issue, but we will go ahead.

7 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

8 MR. CURRAN: Thank you, Your Honor.

9 MS. SHORES: Your Honor, I have one minor
10 housekeeping matter that we might take advantage of
11 this delay to take care of.

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

13 MS. SHORES: The parties have a joint
14 stipulation regarding the admission of exhibits into
15 evidence. All the parties have agreed, and I have a
16 copy of the stipulation here, which is marked JX-4.

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And you are going to give the
18 original or an original of that to the court reporter?

19 MS. SHORES: I am, sir.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And let me have a copy.

21 MS. SHORES: I will. May I approach?

22 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes. Joint -- well, before I
23 go any further, you have agreed to this, Ms. Bokat?

24 MS. BOKAT: Yes, we have.

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: And Mr. Curran?

1 MR. CURRAN: I believe that's my signature on
2 there, Your Honor. Yes, I have.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: JX-4 is admitted, and that
4 includes the exhibits which are listed thereon.

5 MS. SHORES: Thank you, Your Honor.

6 (Joint Exhibit Number 4 was admitted into
7 evidence.)

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Raise your right hand, please.
9 Whereupon--

10 JOHN F. HOFFMAN
11 a witness, called for examination, having been first
12 duly sworn, was examined and testified as follows:

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you, have a seat.
14 State your full name for the record, please.

15 THE WITNESS: John Fletcher Hoffman.

16 JUDGE CHAPPELL: This is the other Hoffman.

17 MR. NIELDS: This is the other Hoffman back for
18 a repeat appearance, Your Honor.

19 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

20 MR. NIELDS: And once again, this time he will
21 be testifying about the Upsher-Smith negotiations, and
22 once again, in conformity with the Court's ruling, I
23 will be asking him about conversations that he had with
24 Upsher-Smith people. Those conversations have been
25 fully explored in deposition by complaint counsel. I

1 will not be asking him about conversations with his
2 client or mental impressions about the case, which are
3 privileged.

4 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay. You may proceed.

5 DIRECT EXAMINATION

6 BY MR. NIELDS:

7 Q. I'm only going to ask you one repeat question,
8 Mr. Hoffman. How are you employed?

9 A. I am staff vice president and associate general
10 counsel for Schering-Plough.

11 Q. And you've already testified that you were in
12 charge of litigation at Schering since sometime in
13 1996. Is that correct?

14 A. Early 1996, yes.

15 Q. And at least throughout 1997, by the time of
16 1997, you were in charge of patent litigation.

17 A. That's correct.

18 Q. Now, did Schering have a patent infringement
19 lawsuit against -- or did Key Pharmaceuticals have a
20 patent infringement lawsuit pending in 1997 against
21 Upsher-Smith?

22 A. Yes, it did.

23 Q. Did there come a time when you were involved in
24 settlement discussions with people from Upsher-Smith
25 regarding that case?

1 A. Yes, there did.

2 Q. And when was that to the best of your memory?

3 A. I believe it was in early June of 1997.

4 Q. And what discussions were you involved in?

5 A. I had a telephone conversation with a Mr. Nick
6 Cannella, who was outside counsel to Upsher-Smith. I
7 had a meeting in the law department conference room
8 with people from Key, Schering and people from
9 Upsher-Smith.

10 Q. When you say the "law department conference
11 room" --

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. -- you're talking about where?

14 A. At Schering-Plough in Kenilworth, New Jersey.

15 Q. And this is a distinct event from your phone
16 conversation with Mr. Cannella?

17 A. The phone conversation was in preparation for
18 the meeting, but yes, different days. I attended a
19 meeting in Minnesota at Upsher-Smith's headquarters
20 with people from Schering and people from Upsher-Smith.
21 It's outside Minneapolis, I don't know the name of the
22 suburb. And then I had some follow-up telephone
23 conversations or a conversation or conversations from
24 that.

25 Q. And I think you may have already said this, but

1 approximately when was your conversation with Mr.
2 Cannella?

3 A. I don't remember dates particularly, but if
4 we -- I can place it from the settlement agreement,
5 which --

6 Q. All right, if the settlement agreement is dated
7 the 17th of June --

8 A. Right, I would put it somewhere around the 10th
9 or a little before of June.

10 Q. And again, who was -- who was Mr. Cannella?

11 A. As I understood it, he was outside counsel to
12 Upsher-Smith from the firm that was involved in the
13 patent litigation but antitrust knowledgeable.

14 Q. And at whose instance did this conversation
15 occur?

16 A. I asked to have the conversation. I don't know
17 whether I called him or he called me, but I had asked
18 to have the conversation.

19 Q. What was the subject of the conversation?

20 A. It was shortly before the meeting that took
21 place in Kenilworth, and the subject was preparing for
22 it. The particular things we discussed were possible
23 settlement of the lawsuit, some antitrust concerns I
24 had, and potential for business dealings between the
25 parties or licensing particularly.

1 Q. And what was said on those subjects?

2 A. As I recall, I -- there was a brief
3 introduction, and then I said that -- to Mr. Cannella
4 that I had some antitrust concerns concerning the
5 meeting, that Schering was not going to be paying
6 Upsher-Smith to stay off the market and that I didn't
7 want that subject to be discussed at the meeting, and I
8 know we discussed the type of settlement we were
9 talking about, which was giving them -- giving
10 Upsher-Smith a license to come on the market sometime
11 before the patent term expired, and I think we
12 discussed the date, and then that the meeting was to be
13 really about licensing, and at the end it was a "we'll
14 see you there" kind of discussion.

15 Q. So, that's how the conversation ended?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And do you remember when the meeting in
18 Kenilworth took place?

19 A. Again, backing up from the settlement
20 agreement, I would say somewhere around the 12th or
21 13th, that would be of June 1997.

22 Q. And who was there?

23 A. From the Schering side of the table, we had me,
24 Mr. Kapur, Mr. Ray Kapur, Mr. Jeff Wasserstein, and on
25 the Upsher side of the table, we had Ian Troup, his --

1 there was a consultant that was with him whose name
2 continually escapes me, and Mr. Cannella.

3 Q. And who is Mr. Troup?

4 A. I understood him to be the head of
5 Upsher-Smith. I think his title was president, but I
6 understood him to be the head of the business
7 operation.

8 Q. And who is Mr. Kapur?

9 A. Mr. Kapur is in charge of the worldwide
10 generics operation at Schering-Plough and president of
11 the U.S. generic subsidiary.

12 Q. And who is Mr. Wasserstein?

13 A. At that point, he was in charge of the
14 corporate business development function, which included
15 licensing.

16 Q. About how long did the meeting last?

17 A. I would say somewhere between an hour and two
18 hours, maybe around an hour and a half. It wasn't --
19 it wasn't a half a day or a day meeting.

20 Q. And what subject or subjects were discussed at
21 the meeting?

22 A. A discussion of the settlement of the lawsuit
23 broadly and a discussion of potential licensing of
24 products from Upsher-Smith to Schering.

25 Q. And which of those two topics, settlement and

1 licensing, took up more time?

2 A. Oh, clearly the licensing part of it.

3 Q. What was said on the subject of settlement?

4 A. I remember at the beginning of the meeting,
5 there was some brief posturing between Mr. Troup and
6 myself on the merits of the lawsuit, but pretty
7 quickly -- and it wasn't more than a minute or two -- I
8 said, We're beyond that. We've got how we're going to
9 settle this lawsuit. Let's get on to the licensing
10 discussions.

11 Q. When you say you got how you were going to
12 settle the lawsuit, was there a mention of a date?

13 A. I believe that the date of September 1, 2001
14 was mentioned. It was the only date under discussion
15 at that time, but I don't have a very precise
16 recollection of that.

17 Q. And did he make a response when you said that?

18 A. Yeah, I think -- I remember the phrase he used
19 was, "That's all well and good for you, John," kind of
20 spreading his arms to mean kind of I took it
21 Schering-Plough, "but I have cash needs, I have all of
22 my company's cash tied up in two products in
23 development," the Klor Con -- the K-Dur generic and
24 what turned out to be the Niaspan product or the
25 sustained release niacin, and I said, Well, I said that

1 we're willing to do arm's length business deals that
2 stand on their own two feet, and that's what we're here
3 to discuss.

4 Q. Did anything else come up during the meeting on
5 the subject of settlement?

6 A. At some point during the meeting, and it was
7 early on, Mr. Troup's consultant or Upsher-Smith's
8 consultant started talking about how much Schering had
9 to lose in the litigation if we lost it. I took that
10 to be an invitation to pay them to stay off the market,
11 and I said we weren't going to do that and I didn't
12 want to discuss that. Mr. Cannella agreed with me, and
13 we moved on.

14 Q. Now, what was said on the subject of licenses
15 at that meeting?

16 A. Quite a bit, but the particular subject that
17 was most prominent was the sustained release niacin
18 product. I remember Mr. Troup making a brief
19 presentation on the size of the market for that product
20 and on the product itself. I recall we -- somebody on
21 our side of the table said that we were already
22 familiar with the product through our prior discussions
23 with Kos Pharmaceuticals.

24 I remember that they had brought a package of
25 materials, I don't know whether it was a half an inch

1 or an inch thick, that was in a folder, and that was
2 given to Mr. Kapur. I understood it to be some sort of
3 clinical data or data on the product.

4 I recall Mr. Troup expressing the view that he
5 wanted \$70 to \$80 million for the rights outside the
6 U.S. for this product, and I remember Mr. Kapur asking
7 whether or not the U.S. rights were available, and Mr.
8 Troup saying no, that Upsher-Smith was keeping those
9 for themselves.

10 Then I recall there were some other products
11 discussed. I -- there were some that Mr. Troup talked
12 about that Mr. Kapur was not interested in and just
13 said no, we're not interested in that. There were at
14 least two others at that meeting that were discussed,
15 the cholestyramine product, I think it's called
16 Prevalite, and the generic pentoxifylline, and Mr.
17 Kapur was interested in those, although Mr. Troup
18 didn't agree that they were -- to use the vernacular --
19 "in the deal" at that meeting. He was not being
20 committed on that.

21 Q. And how was the -- how was it left at the end
22 of this meeting?

23 A. I don't think we had an agreement on the
24 settlement, but we would get back to them once we had
25 reviewed the clinical data.

1 Q. Once you'd reviewed the?

2 A. Clinical data, the data that they had given us
3 at the meeting.

4 Q. This sort of half inch thick --

5 A. Half inch or an inch, I don't recall
6 particularly. I remember it being passed across. I
7 don't remember exactly -- I didn't look at it
8 particularly.

9 Q. And this was data on Niacor?

10 A. If that's -- yeah, the sustained release niacin
11 product.

12 Q. Now, did you then have a meeting, a follow-up
13 meeting later?

14 A. Yes, we did. It was in Upsher-Smith's
15 headquarters in -- outside Minneapolis. I recall we
16 took an extraordinarily early flight and got there very
17 early, but we met in a conference room there. I recall
18 Mr. Troup was there, I believe the gentleman who was a
19 consultant was there. I remember meeting somebody else
20 from Upsher-Smith in the hall, I think it was the CFO,
21 but he didn't play any particular part in the meeting.

22 Q. Who was there from Schering's side?

23 A. Aside from me, Mr. Wasserstein, Mr. Kapur and
24 Paul Thompson, who was an attorney in the law
25 department licensing group.

1 Q. And how -- if you can recall, approximately how
2 many days after the meeting at Kenilworth was the trip
3 to Minnesota?

4 A. Less than a week, somewhere in there.

5 Q. What subjects were discussed at this meeting in
6 Minnesota?

7 A. Again, the settlement of the lawsuit, but
8 mainly licensing.

9 Q. And what was said on the subject of settlement?

10 A. Again, Mr. Troup and I went through a little
11 debate for about a minute about the merits of the
12 lawsuit, and then again, it was let's move on to talk
13 about the licensing prospects.

14 Q. And what was said on the subject of licensing?

15 A. Again, this meeting lasted somewhat longer, but
16 there was a discussion of the Niacor product. Again, I
17 recall the numbers \$70 to \$80 million, in that range,
18 from Mr. Troup. I recall -- it wasn't just for
19 Niaspan, but I'll come back to that in a minute -- an
20 offer from our part of \$60 million in what I'll call
21 traunches or bites, three bites over two years, and
22 then some milestones, \$10 million worth of milestones,
23 ten \$1 million milestones on introduction in various
24 major European markets. The scope of the license,
25 which was outside the U.S., I think it's outside the

1 NAFTA countries, was discussed.

2 A good part of the meeting was taken up with
3 Mr. Kapur arguing to get the additional products into
4 the deal, if you will, and eventually he did succeed,
5 and pentoxifylline outside the U.S., cholestyramine for
6 U.S. and overseas but not exclusive in the U.S., and
7 the Klor Con product outside the U.S. were put into the
8 deal. That's pretty much it.

9 Q. How was -- where did things stand at the end of
10 the meeting?

11 A. I thought we had a deal, but we had to write it
12 up, and we went back to write it up.

13 Q. And were all the details of the deal agreed to
14 or just the general terms?

15 A. I think the principal terms were agreed to. I
16 don't know that all of the details that we would do
17 were agreed to, but certainly the principal terms.

18 Q. And again, in terms of just the settlement, the
19 entry date, what was -- what was agreed to at that time
20 on the entry date?

21 A. A royalty-free license to Upsher-Smith to come
22 on the market on September 1, 2001, about five years
23 before the product patent expired.

24 Q. Now, what happened at the -- after the end of
25 the meeting?

1 A. We flew back to Newark, came into Kenilworth.
2 I know that Mr. Thompson was working on the plane on a
3 draft of the settlement agreement. I recall having a
4 couple of telephone conversations with Mr. Cannella
5 that I wouldn't characterize as substantive, more in
6 the nature of "where is your draft" kind of
7 conversations, that day or the next.

8 I know we produced a draft and we sent it over
9 to Upsher-Smith or to Mr. Cannella. I remember having
10 a telephone conversation about some terms, I don't
11 remember the particular terms, with Mr. Cannella where
12 I took his comments and passed them along to Paul and
13 to Mr. Kapur, Mr. Wasserstein. And we worked through
14 that next day.

15 I recall having a telephone conversation with
16 Mr. Troup to find out whether his fax would be -- he
17 would be available by fax to sign up an agreement early
18 in the morning of the following -- not the day
19 following the meeting in Minnesota but the day after
20 that, and he said yes. And somewhere around 3:00 in
21 the morning, we signed up the preliminary or the letter
22 agreement, and I went home, much relieved.

23 Q. Now, Mr. Hoffman, I think I have included in a
24 binder in front of you at tab 347 a copy of the
25 agreement. Would you look at that and tell me if

1 that's a copy of the agreement that was reached at 3:00
2 in the morning?

3 A. I believe that's it, yes, sir.

4 Q. Did I say that this was CX 347?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Okay.

7 A. In any event, it is.

8 Q. Now, it bears the date June 17, 1997. If this
9 was signed at 3:00 in the morning, 3:00 in the morning
10 what day?

11 A. I believe it was the 18th.

12 Q. Okay. And then that means that you were
13 working on it on the 17th?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Or somebody was drafting it?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And that means, then, what would have been the
18 date of your meeting in Minnesota?

19 A. The 16th.

20 Q. When was the trial of the case actually to
21 occur?

22 A. Very shortly thereafter. I don't remember
23 whether it was the 18th or 19th, but it was very
24 shortly thereafter.

25 Q. During your meetings with Upsher-Smith people,

1 did you have any discussions with them regarding the
2 180-day exclusivity provisions of the law?

3 A. No, sir.

4 MR. NIELDS: May I have just a moment, Your
5 Honor?

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes, you may.

7 MR. NIELDS: I have nothing further, Your
8 Honor.

9 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do you realize that was
10 exactly 20 minutes?

11 MR. NIELDS: That is the only time in this
12 entire case I have even been close, Your Honor.

13 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I think a donkey just flew by
14 the window.

15 Mr. Orlans, cross examination?

16 MR. ORLANS: Thank you, Your Honor.

17 CROSS EXAMINATION

18 BY MR. ORLANS:

19 Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Hoffman, actually evening,
20 virtually.

21 A. Excuse me? Good afternoon.

22 Q. I said, good afternoon or good evening,
23 whichever is more appropriate.

24 A. Yes, yes.

25 Q. Mr. Hoffman, let me take you back to the patent

1 litigation for a few moments. First of all, there were
2 no antitrust or other counterclaims in the patent
3 litigation with Upsher. Is that correct?

4 A. I don't recall any.

5 Q. Okay. And that would also be true of the
6 patent litigation against ESI, am I correct?

7 A. I frankly don't remember.

8 Q. Okay. In terms of the Upsher patent
9 litigation, you projected that if the trial had gone
10 forward, Upsher had prevailed, that it would have been
11 about a year before Upsher would have been able to go
12 on the market. Isn't that correct?

13 A. I projected?

14 Q. That's correct, sir.

15 A. I don't believe so, no.

16 MR. ORLANS: May I approach, Your Honor?

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

18 BY MR. ORLANS:

19 Q. I'll give you a copy of your investigational
20 hearing so that you can have that.

21 A. Sure.

22 Q. Let me ask you, sir, to turn to page 79 --
23 actually, that's wrong, hang on a second.

24 Actually, where I am is -- yeah, the bottom of
25 79 and the top of page 80. I'm going to put that on

1 the ELMO as well.

2 A. Yes, sir.

3 Q. Okay, and didn't you testify at your
4 deposition, sir:

5 "So, it wasn't as if, even if they had won the
6 trial starting June 18th and going for four weeks or
7 whatever it was going to go, that they'd be on the
8 market the next day. If we appealed it would be about
9 a year -- given federal circuit normal time -- before
10 they would be able to go on the market."

11 Wasn't that your testimony, sir?

12 A. I don't think that's complete, but that's what
13 it says where you read, sir.

14 Q. You never corrected that in any way, did you,
15 sir?

16 A. I don't believe I had to.

17 Q. On your direct, you talked about a conversation
18 you had with Mr. Cannella. Do you recall that?

19 A. That's correct.

20 Q. And he is an outside attorney for Upsher. Is
21 that right?

22 A. That's correct.

23 Q. And that conversation you say was prior to the
24 Kenilworth meeting. Is that right?

25 A. That's right.

1 Q. Sir, didn't you testify at your investigational
2 hearing that as of the time that you were given a
3 briefing on the second Minnesota meeting, which was a
4 meeting that you had not attended, that you had had no
5 direct communications with any of the Upsher people
6 about settlement as of that date?

7 A. Could I have that back, please? I believe
8 you're correct, but I just want to make sure I heard it
9 correctly.

10 MR. ORLANS: Could the reporter reread it, Your
11 Honor?

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Go ahead, Susanne.

13 (The record was read as follows:)

14 "QUESTION: Sir, didn't you testify at your
15 investigational hearing that as of the time that you
16 were given a briefing on the second Minnesota meeting,
17 which was a meeting that you had not attended, that you
18 had had no direct communications with any of the Upsher
19 people about settlement as of that date?"

20 THE WITNESS: Yes, and I believe that's
21 correct.

22 BY MR. ORLANS:

23 Q. Okay. Then at page 31, line 21, you were asked
24 whether there were any subsequent phone calls or
25 meetings between Schering or Key personnel and

1 Upsher-Smith personnel.

2 Do you see that?

3 A. Thirty-one --

4 Q. And your response in the affirmative. Do you
5 see that testimony, sir?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Okay. And after that, the question went on:

8 "QUESTION: Was the next communication a phone
9 call or a meeting?

10 "ANSWER: There was a subsequent meeting. I'm
11 sure there was a phone call setting it up. Although I
12 don't know any details.

13 "QUESTION: You don't know any details about
14 the phone call?

15 "ANSWER: About the phone call."

16 Then it goes on to discuss the meeting.

17 Do you see that testimony, sir?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Did you make any reference to any conversation
20 with Mr. Cannella in that deposition -- in that
21 investigational hearing, sir?

22 A. No, I later corrected this in my deposition to
23 say that Mr. Cannella --

24 Q. Sir, that's not what I asked you.

25 A. All right.

1 Q. I just asked you is there anything in here.

2 A. No, there's not, if that's the question.

3 Q. That was the question.

4 Now, let's go back to the meeting at
5 Kenilworth. That was the third meeting overall. Is
6 that correct?

7 A. It was the first one I was at, but yes, I think
8 it was the third meeting.

9 Q. Right, okay. There had been two previous ones
10 you hadn't attended.

11 A. I believe that's correct, yes.

12 Q. And at that meeting you discussed the potential
13 for settlement by giving Upsher a royalty-free license
14 at some point prior to the expiration of the patent.
15 Is that right?

16 A. In a broad sense, yes.

17 Q. Okay. And Upsher wanted a payment to settle
18 the lawsuit. Isn't that also correct?

19 A. I believe that to be correct.

20 Q. Okay. And in fact, they wanted to be paid to
21 stay off the market. Isn't that right?

22 MR. CURRAN: Objection, foundation, Your Honor.
23 This witness can testify as to what Upsher
24 representatives said but not what they wanted or what
25 they subjectively thought.

1 BY MR. ORLANS:

2 Q. Didn't they tell you --

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Hold on.

4 MR. ORLANS: Surely.

5 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Are you going to respond or
6 withdraw the question?

7 MR. ORLANS: I'll withdraw the question.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thank you.

9 BY MR. ORLANS:

10 Q. Didn't Upsher indicate to you that they wanted
11 to be paid to stay off the market?

12 A. I believe to me, in the meeting in Kenilworth,
13 as I described, there was something I took to that
14 effect. I'm not sure anybody used those words, but
15 there was something I took to that effect.

16 Q. And you say you told them you were not going to
17 pay them to stay off the market. Is that correct?

18 A. Yes, or we're not going to do that or words
19 like that, yes.

20 Q. And you didn't explain to Upsher why you
21 wouldn't pay them for that purpose, did you?

22 A. I don't recall whether I said antitrust
23 concerns in that Kenilworth meeting. I did in my -- I
24 believe in my phone call with Mr. Cannella.

25 Q. You mentioned that Upsher brought in a

1 consultant who analyzed what Schering stood to lose if
2 it lost the lawsuit.

3 A. I believe he began to discuss that in the
4 meeting I was in in Kenilworth, yes. I don't know,
5 "analyze" can cover a lot of things, but I believe --

6 Q. Did you have -- I'm sorry.

7 A. -- I believe he did start to discuss that in
8 the meeting in Kenilworth, yes.

9 Q. Do you recall what the consultant was actually
10 analyzing?

11 A. No.

12 MR. CURRAN: Objection, the same foundational
13 objection, Your Honor. This witness can testify to
14 what was said at the meeting but not what was done or
15 thought prior to that.

16 MR. ORLANS: His recollection is exactly the
17 point, Judge. I'm asking what he remembers about what
18 the consultant did.

19 MR. CURRAN: I'd accept the question
20 reformulated as Mr. Orlans has characterized it now.

21 MR. ORLANS: I thought that was the question I
22 was asking.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, so --

24 THE WITNESS: Sorry to --

25 JUDGE CHAPPELL: -- let's restate the question.

1 MR. ORLANS: Surely.

2 BY MR. ORLANS:

3 Q. Do you recall what the consultant was analyzing
4 when he did his analysis?

5 MR. CURRAN: Objection, foundation.

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: I'll sustain it. You can ask
7 him if he knows what he was analyzing.

8 BY MR. ORLANS:

9 Q. You saw the consultant doing an analysis. Is
10 that correct, sir?

11 A. No.

12 Q. Oh, you didn't?

13 A. No.

14 Q. What did you see?

15 A. He began talking about an analysis. I don't
16 know -- I certainly didn't see him do one there.

17 Q. Okay. And the analysis that he began talking
18 about was an analysis of how much Schering would lose.
19 Is that correct?

20 A. That's correct.

21 Q. Okay. And did he further explain what he meant
22 or what the basis for his analysis was?

23 A. Not before I stopped him, no.

24 Q. Mr. Troup told you that Upsher had a need for
25 income and would have to do some sort of a deal so that

1 they could get income. Isn't that right?

2 A. I think the word he used was "cash," but yes.

3 Q. Didn't you tell Mr. Troup in response that
4 Schering would find a way to provide Upsher with income
5 to make up for what they expected to earn from their
6 generic K-Dur had Upsher been able to go on the market
7 with it?

8 A. I don't believe I said that. I don't remember
9 saying that. I recall saying that I would be
10 comfortable with a business deal that stood on its own
11 two feet.

12 Q. Wasn't that, sir, Schering's position with
13 respect to the payment?

14 MR. NIELDS: Objection, because the "that" is
15 unclear.

16 BY MR. ORLANS:

17 Q. Okay. Wasn't -- well, strike that, let me do
18 it this way:

19 Let me ask you, sir, to turn to -- well,
20 actually, it's not a document we've given you, so let
21 me do that.

22 Your Honor, may I approach?

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Yes.

24 Mr. Nields, I assume if a question is
25 withdrawn, you are withdrawing your objection as well.

1 Is that correct?

2 MR. NIELDS: Yes, Your Honor, I am.

3 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

4 BY MR. ORLANS:

5 Q. I'm showing you Commission Exhibit CX 338. Is
6 that a document that you've seen before, sir?

7 A. I believe so, yes.

8 Q. Okay. And this was the presentation made to
9 Schering's board in connection with the Upsher-Smith
10 license. Is that right?

11 A. It's the written material that was distributed
12 before the board meeting, yes.

13 Q. Okay. Let me direct your attention, sir, to
14 page 270, which is I believe the fifth page in.
15 Doesn't that page state as follows, middle of the
16 paining under Payment Terms:

17 "In the course of our discussions with
18 Upsher-Smith, they indicated that a prerequisite of any
19 deal would be to provide them with a guaranteed income
20 stream for the next 24 months to make up for the income
21 that they had projected to earn from sales of Klor Con
22 had they been successful in their suit."

23 Do you see that, sir?

24 A. Yes, I see that. That does --

25 Q. And that was what the board was told about this

1 deal. Is that right?

2 A. It's in the board presentation, yes.

3 Q. After Mr. Troup told you about Upsher's need
4 for money, it was at that point that you began
5 discussing the license of Niacor. Isn't that right?

6 A. It was at that point in the meeting that the
7 subject of Niacor was discussed, yes.

8 Q. Okay.

9 A. After that.

10 Q. And whether or not other products were
11 discussed for licensing purposes, Niacor was the major
12 licensing opportunity in your mind. Isn't that right?

13 A. That was certainly my understanding, yes.

14 Q. Sir, at the time of this meeting in Kenilworth,
15 Schering had not done anything that you would call an
16 evaluation of Niacor for licensing purposes. Is that
17 right?

18 A. I believe you're correct on Niacor.

19 Q. In that third meeting, sir, you had a
20 discussion of a range of possible entry dates, but a
21 specific date was not picked in that meeting. Isn't
22 that right?

23 A. I don't think it was picked. As I said at the
24 beginning, there was some posturing -- I called it
25 chest-thumping I think at one point -- between me and

1 Mr. Troup on that subject. I only recall September 1,
2 2001 as the date. There may have been some dates right
3 around that area discussed, but that's all I recall.
4 I -- I will agree that at least my investigational
5 hearing does say differently.

6 Q. You said that you discussed a range of dates.
7 Is that right?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. And you hadn't settled on one as of the close
10 of that meeting.

11 A. I think that's correct, yes.

12 Q. And similarly, with licensing-in of Niacor, you
13 had not agreed on the particular terms, correct?

14 A. Is that question as of the end of the
15 Kenilworth meeting?

16 Q. That's correct, sir.

17 A. Terms had been discussed, but no, we had no
18 agreement on it.

19 Q. Do you know whether prior to the patent
20 litigation anyone at Schering had ever talked to Upsher
21 about licensing Niacor?

22 A. I don't know.

23 Q. Let me move on to the fourth meeting, which was
24 the one in Minneapolis, actually your second meeting,
25 if that's a better way to describe it.

1 A. I don't want this to be misleading. You keep
2 mentioning third and fourth meetings. I think there
3 may have been one more.

4 Q. Okay, why don't we talk in terms of the
5 meetings you attended --

6 A. Why don't we talk about the one in Minnesota.
7 Would that be more comfortable?

8 Q. That's fine. So, of the meetings you attended,
9 you attended one in Kenilworth, which we have been
10 discussing, and you attended a second meeting in
11 Minnesota.

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And the second meeting in Minnesota that you
14 attended was the final meeting, essentially the one
15 where the final terms were reached. Is that right?

16 A. Subject to having them written up and signed,
17 yes.

18 Q. And at that meeting, you discussed the
19 settlement of the lawsuit and the date of September 1,
20 2001 as the entry or license date. Is that correct?

21 A. That's correct.

22 Q. And you also discussed the licensing of Niacor
23 and several other products. Is that correct?

24 A. Right.

25 Q. And also the money that Schering would pay,

1 correct?

2 A. For the licenses, yes.

3 Q. Well, actually, sir, you say for the licenses,
4 but in fact, doesn't the agreement indicate that the
5 money is to be paid for all of the rights acquired by
6 Schering, including the settlement of the patent
7 lawsuit?

8 A. That's what the I think paragraph 11 seems to
9 say. It was directly contrary to every discussion we
10 had had, but --

11 Q. Well, sir, let's talk about that agreement for
12 a minute, and maybe I will provide you with a copy.
13 Actually, I think it's in the booklet that you have in
14 front of you, CX 347.

15 A. Yes, sir.

16 Q. I assume this agreement was written up by
17 people who are careful in writing agreements. Would
18 that be fair to say?

19 A. I believe Mr. Thompson to be a careful lawyer,
20 yes.

21 Q. If you look at paragraph 11, sir, isn't it
22 explicit -- oh, I should do that, thank you. We're
23 looking at paragraph 11, which is --

24 A. Of the attachment?

25 Q. Yes, of the attachment, which is 194 is the

1 last Bates number.

2 And doesn't that paragraph 11 explicitly state,
3 "In consideration for the licenses, rights and
4 obligations described in paragraphs 1 through 10 above,
5 SP Licensee," that is Schering-Plough, "shall make the
6 following payments to Upsher-Smith," and then it lists
7 the payments. Is that correct?

8 A. That's what it says, yes.

9 Q. And the paragraphs referred to for which
10 consideration is being paid include paragraphs that
11 explicitly talk about settlement of the lawsuit and the
12 entry date, do they not?

13 A. That's correct.

14 Q. Okay. So, on the face of this agreement, it's
15 explicit and clear, is it not, that the money to be
16 paid was paid at least in part for the settlement of
17 the lawsuit?

18 A. You could interpret it that way.

19 Q. Sir, isn't that explicit?

20 A. I don't want to quibble with you.

21 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, I object. I just
22 think that's a complete mischaracterization.

23 MR. ORLANS: I'm just asking him whether that's
24 not what the face of the agreement says, Judge. I
25 don't think this is a question of interpretation.

1 BY MR. ORLANS:

2 Q. This is a question of simply reading the
3 language, sir. Isn't that what the language says?

4 A. Well, sir, if you read the language, you would
5 realize that this also includes the milestone payments,
6 which clearly weren't payment for any entry, but I
7 don't want to quibble with you. I agree with your
8 general remark.

9 Q. Okay. At this meeting --

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Just so I'm clear, the witness
11 answered before I could rule on your objection, Mr.
12 Nields, so --

13 THE WITNESS: I apologize.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: -- I believe in his response
15 to his objection that Mr. Orlans clarified the issue
16 and the witness responded, so with that, I will have to
17 effectively overrule the objection.

18 MR. ORLANS: Or decide its moot, one of the
19 two.

20 BY MR. ORLANS:

21 Q. At this meeting, Mr. Troup started out wanting
22 \$70 to \$80 million. Is that correct?

23 A. Yes, that's what I said.

24 Q. And you negotiated down to \$60 million?

25 A. In three bites over two years, plus some

1 milestones.

2 Q. And didn't Mr. Troup tell you that he needed a
3 revenue stream to replace what they were not going to
4 get?

5 A. He -- he may have said that, yeah. I recall
6 him specifically talking about the need for cash, but I
7 think that sounds familiar.

8 Q. Okay. And the \$60 million in bites that you
9 settled on as a payment, those payments were up front
10 and nonrefundable. Isn't that correct?

11 A. They were nonrefundable. They were over two
12 years.

13 Q. Okay.

14 A. I don't know if that's up front or not, but
15 that's what they were.

16 Q. Okay, I stand corrected. They were
17 nonrefundable and they were noncontingent.

18 A. That's correct.

19 Q. In terms of --

20 MR. NIELDS: Wait a minute, I don't --

21 THE WITNESS: I don't think that's correct,
22 actually.

23 BY MR. ORLANS:

24 Q. Oh, you don't think that's correct?

25 A. No, I don't believe that's correct.

1 Q. What was the -- what were those payments
2 contingent on, sir?

3 A. I'll have to take a look at the agreement, if
4 you will just give me a second.

5 Q. Okay.

6 A. Paragraph 12, if the licenses were declared
7 invalid that we got from Upsher-Smith by anybody, we
8 didn't have to make the payments.

9 Q. Okay, but so long as the licenses were not
10 declared invalid, the money had to be paid, correct?

11 A. I guess as you would suspect, yes.

12 Q. And in fact, the money was paid, wasn't it?

13 A. Yes, it was.

14 Q. None of the milestone or other payments were
15 ever made, were they?

16 A. I don't believe so.

17 Q. Let me go back for a few minutes and discuss
18 Niacor, and again, in your view, Niacor was the major
19 licensing opportunity and not the other products. Is
20 that correct?

21 A. That's the way I understood it.

22 Q. And in fact, that's what the board was told as
23 well. Isn't that right?

24 A. Probably.

25 Q. Niacor was not FDA approved at that time, was

1 it?

2 A. I don't believe so, no.

3 Q. And in fact, it never received approval, did
4 it?

5 A. Not that I know of.

6 Q. Isn't FDA approval important for a number of
7 reasons, including demonstrating that the product's a
8 viable commercial product?

9 A. These were ex-U.S. licenses.

10 Q. Correct.

11 A. I suppose it would be nice to have FDA
12 approval, but it probably doesn't matter that much.

13 Q. But it would have been a significant factor in
14 assuring the company that the drug was a viable drug,
15 wouldn't it?

16 A. I don't know what would assure the company that
17 it was a viable drug, sir.

18 Q. Is it something that --

19 A. I did not do --

20 Q. I'm sorry?

21 A. I did not do an evaluation of this product.

22 Q. Okay. In negotiations with Upsher, did you
23 ever consider making the \$60 million contingent on FDA
24 approval?

25 A. I don't recall that being discussed.

1 Q. You have done that with other products, have
2 you not?

3 A. It may surprise you to know I don't negotiate
4 licenses generally. I don't know, but I -- you're
5 probably right, but I don't know.

6 Q. Well, sir, last week we discussed ESI and its
7 license, did we not, and we talked about how in the
8 context of the ESI agreement and what you called a bet,
9 you essentially bet on FDA approval. Do you remember
10 that?

11 A. Yeah. That seems like apples and oranges to
12 me, but yes, I recall that.

13 Q. Okay. Was there any discussion of including a
14 provision in the agreement in the event that Niacor was
15 not FDA approved?

16 A. As I said, not that I recall.

17 Q. How about discussions about including a
18 provision in the agreement that would have required the
19 parties to use best efforts to carry out their
20 respective obligations, did you discuss such a
21 provision?

22 A. I don't recall.

23 Q. How about a provision that would have required
24 Upsher to provide reports to Schering on Upsher's
25 continuing developmental efforts on Niacor?

1 A. I don't recall a particular discussion about
2 that. This was the material terms of the agreement,
3 not all the terms.

4 Q. Was there any discussion of creating a
5 committee comprised of representatives of companies to
6 oversee implementation of the agreement?

7 A. Not that I recall.

8 MR. ORLANS: I have no further questions, Your
9 Honor.

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Redirect?

11 MR. NIELDS: I have a few redirect, Your Honor.

12 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

13 BY MR. NIELDS:

14 Q. Mr. Hoffman, during any of your discussions,
15 did Schering ever agree to pay Upsher-Smith for delay?

16 A. No.

17 Q. During any of your discussions, did Schering
18 agree to pay Upsher-Smith more than the licenses it
19 received were worth?

20 A. No.

21 MR. ORLANS: Objection, Your Honor. I don't
22 think this gentleman is qualified to know what the
23 licenses that were agreed to were worth. He's already
24 testified that he's not an expert in licensing, and he
25 doesn't evaluate licenses.

1 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Sustained.

2 BY MR. NIELDS:

3 Q. Mr. Hoffman, during any of the discussions that
4 you had with Upsher-Smith, did anyone from Schering's
5 side tell Upsher that they would pay them any more than
6 the licenses they received were worth?

7 A. No.

8 Q. Now, you were shown the memorandum that went to
9 the board.

10 A. 338?

11 Q. CX 338.

12 A. Yes, sir.

13 Q. You were shown one page of that document. I'm
14 going to ask you to look at the third page in.

15 A. Including the cover or not?

16 Q. Including the cover.

17 A. Okay.

18 Q. So that it's got the Bates numbers 1200268 at
19 the bottom.

20 A. I have it.

21 Q. And at the bottom of the second paragraph, the
22 very bottom part of it says, "we informed them that any
23 such deal should stand on its own merit, independent of
24 the settlement."

25 Is that an accurate description of what you

1 told Upsher-Smith at the meetings you attended?

2 A. Yes, that's what I meant by "stands on its own
3 two feet."

4 Q. Now, going to the agreement itself, which is in
5 the binder in front of you, and it's CX 347, you were
6 asked a question by Mr. Orlans about paragraph 11 that
7 has a statement at the beginning, "In consideration for
8 the licenses, rights and obligations described in
9 paragraphs 1 through 10 above," and 1 through 10 is
10 basically most of the rest of the agreement --

11 A. Right.

12 Q. -- it -- I want to ask you about the rest of
13 paragraph 11. There are little -- I don't know how you
14 call these, but I call them little Roman i and little
15 Roman ii and little Roman iii.

16 A. Right.

17 Q. And it mentions a \$28 million figure, a \$20
18 million figure, a \$12 million figure. Is it true that
19 in each case that is described as a royalty payment?

20 A. It's an up-front payment royalty payment, yes.

21 Q. And in your understanding of the word
22 "royalty," is that usually for license rights received?

23 MR. ORLANS: Objection, Your Honor. He's
24 asking for an expert opinion.

25 MR. NIELDS: Your Honor, I think Mr. Hoffman

1 was asked on direct to try to interpret this --

2 MR. ORLANS: That's absolutely wrong. All I
3 asked him to do was read it, Judge. We had a bit of
4 dispute over this, but all I wanted to know was what
5 the language of the document said. I never asked for
6 interpretation of it.

7 MR. NIELDS: Well, fine, I'm happy to rephrase.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay.

9 BY MR. NIELDS:

10 Q. Is it true, Mr. Hoffman, that in the case of
11 every one of these payments, the agreement describes it
12 as a royalty?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Now, you were asked at the very beginning of
15 the cross examination about some testimony you gave at
16 the investigational hearing that essentially had you --
17 I don't want to paraphrase too much -- but essentially
18 had you saying that prior to the meeting in Kenilworth,
19 you had not had a telephone conversation with anyone
20 from Upsher-Smith. Do you remember that?

21 A. I think that was the thrust of the question,
22 yes.

23 Q. Now -- and why was it that you said that at
24 your investigational hearing?

25 A. Because I had --

1 MR. ORLANS: Wait a minute, I am going to
2 object to this, Your Honor. Why he said something at
3 his investigational hearing is certainly his state of
4 mind, which we are not supposed to be going into given
5 the scope of this witness' testimony.

6 MR. NIELDS: Well, I'm perfectly happy to
7 reframe it, Your Honor.

8 BY MR. NIELDS:

9 Q. Did you --

10 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, he has -- he is going to
11 be allowed to recross him on something you asked on --
12 or redirect him on something you asked on cross, but
13 let him rephrase it and see if you still object.

14 MR. ORLANS: Okay, all I asked, Judge, was
15 whether that was what he said at his investigational
16 hearing. I didn't ask for any explanation of why he
17 said anything.

18 BY MR. NIELDS:

19 Q. Did you later correct that testimony?

20 MR. ORLANS: Objection, Your Honor. Prior
21 consistent statements under both the FTC's deposition
22 rules and under clear Supreme Court precedent are not
23 admissible except to the extent that the motive for
24 rendering those prior consistent statements was in
25 between the statement and -- let me rephrase that.

1 One can use prior consistent statements only
2 when a motive for not telling the truth intervenes and
3 came after the statement. In this instance, whatever
4 motive this gentleman had for telling the truth or not
5 telling the truth had already occurred as of the time
6 of the investigational hearing. The fact that he made
7 a subsequent statement at a deposition is not
8 admissible as a prior consistent statement under those
9 circumstances, under clear Supreme Court law.

10 Moreover, under our deposition rules, it is
11 inappropriate to refer to a subsequent deposition of a
12 witness who is being called by a party. There's no
13 basis for doing it.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do you want to address that or
15 withdraw and reframe the question, Mr. Nields?

16 MR. NIELDS: I beg your pardon, Your Honor?

17 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Do you want to respond to that
18 or do you want to withdraw the question?

19 MR. NIELDS: Well, I think I probably want to
20 respond to it, two ways. One is Mr. Orlans asked Mr.
21 Hoffman himself about another answer, did you correct
22 that at any time, and I'm asking him the same question.

23 MR. ORLANS: Your Honor, he gave testimony at
24 his investigational hearing. I didn't ask him about
25 that testimony in the deposition. The fact of the

1 matter is that if that testimony deviated, it's not
2 appropriate for counsel to refer to it. It's a
3 prior -- an effort to try to rehabilitate a witness by
4 using a prior consistent statement, and as I say, the
5 Supreme Court is quite clear on this, that that can be
6 done only in the circumstances where the motive for not
7 telling the truth came after the statement was made.

8 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Did you ask him on cross if he
9 corrected that statement later?

10 MR. ORLANS: No, I did not, Your Honor. He
11 tried to volunteer that, and I cut him off.

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Well, I think the authority
13 you're talking about goes to counsel trying to offer
14 the deposition or offer the information. He's merely
15 asking the witness if it was corrected, and I'm going
16 to allow that. The objection's overruled.

17 THE WITNESS: I think I have the question.
18 Yes, in my investigational hearing, I had mistakenly
19 placed Mr. Cannella at the meeting in Minnesota --

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Mr. Hoffman, the question
21 requires a yes or no answer.

22 THE WITNESS: Yes, I did correct it.

23 BY MR. NIELDS:

24 Q. And when did you correct it?

25 A. At my deposition.

1 Q. And what did you say at your deposition?

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: We don't need to get into
3 that. I'm not going to allow that.

4 BY MR. NIELDS:

5 Q. Okay. At the time of your investigational
6 hearing, did you remember which meeting Mr. Cannella
7 had attended?

8 A. I remembered incorrectly. I thought Minnesota,
9 but I wasn't sure. It turned out that was incorrect.

10 MR. NIELDS: I have nothing further, Your
11 Honor.

12 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Recross?

13 MR. ORLANS: A few questions, Your Honor.

14 RECROSS EXAMINATION

15 BY MR. ORLANS:

16 Q. Just so that we're clear on this, Mr. Hoffman,
17 Schering did agree to pay Upsher by providing them with
18 a guaranteed income stream for the next 24 months to
19 make up for the income they had projected to earn from
20 the sales of Klor Con had they been successful in their
21 suit. Isn't that right?

22 A. I wouldn't have characterized it that way, but
23 you correctly read what it says on that piece of paper.

24 Q. And that's how it was characterized to the
25 board of directors. Isn't that correct?

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. Now, earlier in this document -- could we bring
3 this up on screen, 338, and I want page 3.

4 MS. KATZ: What's the Bates number?

5 MR. ORLANS: 268. Could we blow up the second
6 paragraph?

7 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

8 BY MR. ORLANS:

9 Q. Okay, during redirect examination, Mr. Nields
10 read a portion of that document, sir, but he took only
11 a portion of that sentence. He didn't read you the
12 full sentence, did he?

13 A. He read me all of the sentence that's shown
14 there, yes.

15 Q. Again, sir, he didn't read you the full
16 sentence, because it's not there. Isn't that correct?

17 A. I believe that's correct.

18 Q. So, we don't know what the rest of that
19 sentence says, do we?

20 A. I don't know what --

21 Q. At least on this record.

22 A. I don't know what we know, but you can't read
23 it on this document.

24 Q. At least on this record, we don't know what
25 that statement was. Is that correct?

1 A. I assume you're correct.

2 Q. So, for all we know, sir, the first part of
3 that sentence could read, "Although we are in a
4 position where we must pay for delay, we informed them
5 that any such deal should stand on its own merit
6 independent of the settlement." From this record, we
7 can't say whether that's a correct or incorrect
8 statement, right? We just don't know.

9 A. I believe you do, but from this record, I
10 suppose you don't.

11 Q. Fair enough.

12 So, again, just to make the point, what you've
13 done or what Mr. Nields read you was a sentence
14 fragment taken out of context that we don't have the
15 rest of the context, correct?

16 A. That's one way of looking at it, yes.

17 MR. ORLANS: I have no further questions, Your
18 Honor.

19 MR. NIELDS: Nothing further, Your Honor.

20 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Thanks, Mr. Hoffman. You're
21 excused.

22 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

23 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Who's your next witness, Mr.
24 Nields?

25 MR. NIELDS: Our next witness isn't here now,

1 but our next witness is Dr. Horovitz.

2 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Is he going to be a
3 controversial witness?

4 MR. NIELDS: I never know what will generate
5 controversy, Your Honor. He will --

6 JUDGE CHAPPELL: We seem to start off with a
7 lot of controversy in the mornings around here.

8 MR. NIELDS: I don't think there will -- I
9 don't think there will -- well, I shouldn't say. I
10 don't -- he's an expert witness, Your Honor. Maybe
11 they will make some sort of motion, but I doubt it. He
12 will be on for a reasonable period of the day, I would
13 anticipate.

14 JUDGE CHAPPELL: Okay, thank you.

15 We'll adjourn until tomorrow at 9:30.

16 (Whereupon, at 6:28 p.m., the hearing was
17 adjourned.)

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 C E R T I F I C A T I O N O F R E P O R T E R

2 DOCKET/FILE NUMBER: 9297

3 CASE TITLE: SCHERING-PLOUGH/UPSHER-SMITH

4 DATE: FEBRUARY 13, 2002

5

6 I HEREBY CERTIFY that the transcript contained
7 herein is a full and accurate transcript of the notes
8 taken by me at the hearing on the above cause before
9 the FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION to the best of my
10 knowledge and belief.

11

12 DATED: 2/14/02

13

14

15

16 SUSANNE BERGLING, RMR

17

18 C E R T I F I C A T I O N O F P R O O F R E A D E R

19

20 I HEREBY CERTIFY that I proofread the
21 transcript for accuracy in spelling, hyphenation,
22 punctuation and format.

23

24

25 DIANE QUADE

For The Record, Inc.
Waldorf, Maryland
(301) 870-8025